



EK-GC200

# User Manual

# About this manual

- Please read this manual before using the device to ensure safe and proper use.
- Descriptions are based on the device's default settings.
- Images and screenshots may differ in appearance from the actual product.
- Content may differ from your device depending on the software version and is subject to change without prior notice. For the latest version of the manual, refer to the Samsung website, [www.samsung.com](http://www.samsung.com).
- Content (high quality content) that requires high CPU and RAM usage will affect the overall performance of the device.
- Available features and additional services may vary by device or software.
- Applications and their functions may vary by country, region, or hardware specifications. Samsung is not liable for performance issues caused by applications from any provider other than Samsung.
- Samsung is not liable for performance issues or incompatibilities caused by edited registry settings or modified operating system software. Attempting to customise the operating system may cause the device or applications to work improperly.
- Software, sound sources, wallpapers, images, and other media provided with this device are licensed for limited use. Extracting and using these materials for commercial or other purposes is an infringement of copyright laws. Users are entirely responsible for illegal use of media.
- Default applications that come with the device are subject to updates and may no longer be supported without prior notice. If you have questions about an application provided with the device, contact a Samsung Service Centre. For user-installed applications, contact service providers.
- Modifying the device's operating system or installing softwares from unofficial sources may result in device malfunctions and data corruption or loss. These actions are violations of your Samsung licence agreement and will void your warranty.
- We recommend using your device within the country where you purchased it.
- Use this device responsibly and adhere to all laws and regulations concerning its use.

## Instructional icons



**Warning:** situations that could cause injury to yourself or others



**Caution:** situations that could cause damage to your device or other equipment



**Note:** notes, usage tips, or additional information

## Copyright

Copyright © 2014 Samsung Electronics

This guide is protected under international copyright laws.

No part of this guide may be reproduced, distributed, translated, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or storing in any information storage and retrieval system, without the prior written permission of Samsung Electronics.

## Trademarks

- SAMSUNG and the SAMSUNG logo are registered trademarks of Samsung Electronics.
- Bluetooth® is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc. worldwide.
- Adobe, the Adobe logo, and Photoshop are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.
- Wi-Fi®, Wi-Fi Protected Setup™, Wi-Fi Direct™, Wi-Fi CERTIFIED™, and the Wi-Fi logo are registered trademarks of the Wi-Fi Alliance.
- HDMI, the HDMI logo, and the term “High Definition Multimedia Interface” are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC.
- All other trademarks and copyrights are the property of their respective owners.



## Incompatible applications

Some applications from Android Play Store may not be compatible with the device and may not align correctly with the screen boundary.



PlanetFirst represents Samsung Electronics' commitment to sustainable development and social responsibility through eco-driven business and management activities.



## Health and safety information

Always comply with the following precautions and usage tips to avoid dangerous situations and ensure peak performance of your device. Some content may be not applicable to your device.



### **Warning: situations that could cause injury to yourself or others**

**Do not disassemble or attempt to repair your device.**

- This may result in electric shock or damage to the device.

**Do not use your device near flammable or explosive gases and liquids.**

- This may cause a fire or explosion.

**Do not insert flammable materials into the device or store these materials near the device.**

- This may cause a fire or electric shock.

**Do not handle your device or power supply cord with wet hands.**

- This may result in electric shock.

**Prevent damage to subjects' eyesight.**

- Do not use the flash in close proximity (closer than 1 m) to people or animals. If you use the flash too close to your subject's eyes, this can cause temporary or permanent eyesight damage.

**Do not bite or suck the device or the battery, and keep your device away from small children and pets.**

- Doing so may damage the device or result in an explosion or fire.
- Children or animals can choke on small parts.
- If children use the device, make sure that they use the device properly.

**Do not expose the device to direct sunlight or high temperatures for an extended period of time.**

- Prolonged exposure to sunlight or extreme temperatures can cause permanent damage to your device's internal components.

**Avoid covering the device or charger with blankets or clothes.**

- The device may overheat, which may distort the device or cause a fire.

**Do not handle the power supply cord or go near the charger during a thunderstorm.**

- This may result in electric shock.

**If liquid or foreign objects enter your device, immediately disconnect all power sources, such as the battery or charger, and then contact a Samsung service centre.**

**Comply with any regulations that restrict the use of a device in a certain area.**

- Avoid interference with other electronic devices.
- Turn off the device when in an aircraft. Your device can cause interference with aircraft equipment. Follow all airline regulations and turn off your device when directed by airline personnel.
- Turn off the device near medical equipment. Your device can interfere with medical equipment in hospitals or health care facilities. Follow all regulations, posted warnings, and directions from medical personnel.

**Avoid interference with pacemakers.**

- Maintain the distance between this device and all pacemakers to avoid potential interference, as recommended by the manufacturer and research groups. If you have any reason to suspect that your device is interfering with a pacemaker or other medical device, turn off the device immediately and contact the manufacturer of the pacemaker or medical device for guidance.

**Do not use your device while it is charging.**

- This may result in electric shock.

**Handle and dispose of the device and charger with care.**

- Never dispose of the battery or device in a fire. Never place the battery or device on or in heating devices, such as microwave ovens, stoves, or radiators. The device may explode when overheated. Follow all local regulations when disposing of used battery or device.
- Never crush or puncture the device.
- Avoid exposing the device to high external pressure, which can lead to an internal short circuit and overheating.

**Protect the device, battery and charger from damage.**

- Never use a damaged charger or battery.

**Do not use or store your device in areas with high concentrations of dust or airborne materials.**

- Dust or foreign materials can cause your device to malfunction and may result in fire or electric shock.

**Prevent the multipurpose jack and the small end of the charger from contact with conductive materials, such as liquids, dust, metal powders, and pencil leads.**

- Conductive materials may cause a short circuit or corrosion of the terminals, which may result in an explosion or fire.

**Do not insert the device or supplied accessories into the eyes, ears, or mouth.**

- Doing so may cause suffocation or serious injuries.

**Do not handle a damaged or leaking Lithium Ion (Li-Ion) battery.**

- For safe disposal of your Li-Ion battery, contact your nearest authorised service centre.

**Do not use your device outdoor during a thunderstorm.**

- Doing so may result in electric shock or device malfunction.

**Do not use your device in a hospital, on an aircraft, or in an automotive equipment that can be interfered with by radio frequency.**

- Avoid using your device within a 15 cm range of a pacemaker, if possible, as your device can interfere with the pacemaker.
- To minimise possible interference with a pacemaker, use your device only on the side of your body that is opposite the pacemaker.
- If you use medical equipment, contact the equipment manufacturer before using your device to determine whether or not the equipment will be affected by radio frequencies emitted by the device.
- On an aircraft, using electronic devices can interfere with the aircraft's electronic navigational instruments. Make sure the device is turned off during takeoff and landing. After takeoff, you can use the device in flight mode if allowed by aircraft personnel.
- Turn off the device in a hospital and follow all regulations, posted warnings, and directions from medical personnel. Your device can interfere with medical equipment.
- Electronic devices in your car may malfunction, due to radio interference from your device. Contact the manufacturer for more information.



## **Caution: situations that could cause damage to your device or other equipment**

**Remove the batteries from your device when storing it for an extended period of time.**

- Installed batteries may leak or corrode over time and cause serious damage to your device.

**Use only authentic, manufacturer-recommended, Lithium-ion replacement batteries. Do not damage or heat the battery.**

- Inauthentic, damaged, or heated batteries may cause a fire or personal injury.

**Use only Samsung-approved batteries, chargers, cables and accessories.**

- Using generic batteries or chargers may shorten the life of your device or cause the device to malfunction. They may also cause a fire or cause the battery to explode.
- Use only Samsung-approved battery and charger specifically designed for your device. Incompatible battery and charger can cause serious injuries or damage to your device.
- Samsung cannot be responsible for the user's safety when using accessories or supplies that are not approved by Samsung.

**Use the battery only for its intended purpose.**

- Misusing the battery may cause a fire or electric shock.

**Do not touch the flash while it fires.**

- The flash is very hot when fired and may burn your skin.

**When you use the charger, turn off the device before you disconnect the power to the charger.**

- Failing to do so may result in fire or electric shock.

**Disconnect the charger from the wall socket when not in use.**

- Failing to do so may result in fire or electric shock.

**Do not use a damaged power supply cord, plug, or loose outlet when you charge batteries.**

- This may cause a fire or electric shock.

**Do not allow the charger to come in contact with the +/- terminals on the battery.**

- This may cause a fire or electric shock.

**Do not drop or subject the device to strong impacts.**

- Doing so may damage the screen or external or internal components.

**Exercise caution when you connect cables and install batteries and memory cards.**

- If you force the connectors, improperly connect cables, or improperly install batteries and memory cards, you can damage ports, connectors, and accessories.

**Keep cards with magnetic strips away from the device case.**

- Information stored on the card may be damaged or erased.

**Never use a damaged battery, or memory card.**

- This may result in electric shock or device malfunction or cause a fire.

**Do not place the device in or near magnetic fields.**

- Your device may malfunction or the battery may discharge from exposure to magnetic fields.
- Magnetic stripe cards, including credit cards, phone cards, passbooks, and boarding passes, may be damaged by magnetic fields.

**Do not use the device if the screen is damaged.**

- If the glass or acrylic parts are broken, visit a Samsung service centre to have the device repaired.

**Check that the device is operating properly before use.**

- The manufacturer takes no responsibility for any loss of files or damage that may result from device malfunction or improper use.

**You must plug the small end of the USB cable into your device.**

- If the cable is reversed, it may damage your files. The manufacturer is not responsible for any loss of data.

**Do not expose the lens to direct sunlight.**

- This may discolour the image sensor or cause it to malfunction.

**If the device overheats, remove the battery and allow it to cool down.**

- Prolonged usage of the device may overheat the battery and raise the internal temperature of the device. If the device stops operating, remove the battery and allow it to cool down.
- High internal temperatures may result in noise in your photos. This is normal and does not affect your device's overall performance.

**Avoid interference with other electronic devices.**

- Your device emits radio frequency (RF) signals that may interfere with unshielded or improperly shielded electronic equipment, such as pacemakers, hearing aids, medical devices, and other electronic devices in homes or vehicles. Consult the manufacturers of your electronic devices to solve any interference problems you experience. To prevent unwanted interference, use only Samsung-approved devices or accessories.

**Use your device in the normal position.**

- Avoid contact with your device's internal antenna when the device is turned on.

**Do not use your device near other electronic devices.**

- Most electronic devices use radio frequency signals. Your device may interfere with other electronic devices.

**Do not expose the device to heavy smoke or fumes.**

- Doing so may damage the outside of the device or cause it to malfunction.

**If you use a hearing aid, contact the manufacturer for information about radio interference.**

- The radio frequency emitted by your device may interfere with some hearing aids. Before using your device, contact the manufacturer to determine whether or not your hearing aid will be affected by radio frequencies emitted by the device.

**Do not use your device near devices or apparatuses that emit radio frequencies, such as sound systems or radio towers.**

- Radio frequencies may cause your device to malfunction.

### **Turn off the device in potentially explosive environments.**

- Turn off your device in potentially explosive environments instead of removing the battery.
- Always comply with regulations, instructions and signs in potentially explosive environments.
- Do not use your device at refuelling points (petrol stations), near fuels or chemicals, or in blasting areas.
- Do not store or carry flammable liquids, gases, or explosive materials in the same compartment as the device, its parts, or accessories.

**If you notice strange smells or sounds coming from your device or the battery, or if you see smoke or liquids leaking from the device or battery, stop using the device immediately and take it to a Samsung Service Centre.**

- Failure to do so may result in fire or explosion.

### **Comply with all safety warnings and regulations regarding device usage while operating a vehicle.**

- While driving, safely operating the vehicle is your first responsibility. Never use your device while driving, if it is prohibited by law.

### **Keep your device dry.**

- Humidity and liquids may damage the parts or electronic circuits in your device.
- Do not turn on your device if it is wet. If your device is already on, turn it off and remove the battery immediately (if the device will not turn off or you cannot remove the battery, leave it as-is). Then, dry the device with a towel and take it to a service centre.
- Liquids will change the colour of the label that indicates water damage inside the device. Water damage to your device can void your manufacturer's warranty.

### **Store your device only on flat surfaces.**

- If your device falls, it may be damaged.

### **Do not use your device or applications for a while if the device is overheated.**

- Prolonged exposure of your skin to an overheated device may cause low temperature burn symptoms, such as red spots and pigmentation.

### **Do not use your device with the flap open.**

- The battery may fall out of the device, which may result in damage or malfunction.

### **Use caution when exposed to flashing lights.**

- While using your device, leave some lights on in the room and do not hold the screen too close to your eyes.
- Seizures or blackouts can occur when you are exposed to flashing lights while watching videos or playing Flash-based games for extended periods. If you feel any discomfort, stop using the device immediately.
- If anyone related to you has experienced seizures or blackouts while using a similar device, consult a physician before using the device.
- If you feel discomfort, such as a muscle spasm, or disoriented, stop using the device immediately and consult a physician.
- To prevent eye strain, take frequent breaks while using the device.

### **Reduce the risk of repetitive motion injuries.**

- When you repetitively perform actions, such as pressing keys, drawing characters on a touch screen with your fingers, or playing games, you may experience occasional discomfort in your hands, neck, shoulders, or other parts of your body. When using your device for extended periods, hold the device with a relaxed grip, press the keys lightly, and take frequent breaks. If you continue to have discomfort during or after such use, stop using the device and consult a physician.

### **Protect your hearing and ears when using a headset.**

- Excessive exposure to loud sounds can cause hearing damage.
- Exposure to loud sounds while walking may distract your attention and cause an accident.
- Always turn the volume down before plugging the earphones into an audio source and use only the minimum volume setting necessary to listen to music.
- In dry environments, static electricity can build up in the headset. Avoid using headsets in dry environments or touch a metal object to discharge static electricity before connecting a headset to the device.
- Do not use a headset while driving or riding. Doing so may distract your attention and cause an accident, or may be illegal depending on your region.



**Use caution when using the device while walking or moving.**

- Always be aware of your surroundings to avoid injury to yourself or others.
- Make sure the headset cable does not become entangled in your arms or on nearby objects.

**Do not carry your device in your back pockets or around your waist.**

- You could be injured or damage the device if you fall.

**Install devices and equipment with caution.**

- Ensure that any devices or related equipment installed in your vehicle are securely mounted.
- Avoid placing your device and accessories near or in an airbag deployment area. Improperly installed wireless equipment can cause serious injury when airbags inflate rapidly.

**Allow only qualified personnel to service your device.**

- Allowing unqualified personnel to service your device may result in damage to your device and will void your manufacturer's warranty.

**Do not use the device for anything other than its intended use.**

- Your device may malfunction.

**Do not short-circuit the charger or the device.**

- Doing so may cause electric shock or fire, or the battery may malfunction or explode.

**Do not store your device in very hot or very cold areas. It is recommended to use your device at temperatures from 5 °C to 35 °C.**

- Do not store your device in very hot areas such as inside a car in the summertime. Doing so may cause the screen to malfunction, result in damage to the device, or cause the battery to explode.
- Do not expose your device to direct sunlight for extended periods of time (on the dashboard of a car, for example).

## Data transference and your responsibilities

### Protect your personal data and prevent leakage or misuse of sensitive information.

- While using your device, be sure to back up important data. Samsung is not responsible for the loss of any data.
- When disposing of your device, back up all data and then reset your device to prevent misuse of your personal information.
- Carefully read the permissions screen when downloading applications. Be particularly cautious with applications that have access to many functions or to a significant amount of your personal information.
- Check your accounts regularly for unapproved or suspicious use. If you find any sign of misuse of your personal information, contact your service provider to delete or change your account information.
- In the event your device is lost or stolen, change the passwords on your accounts to protect your personal information.
- Avoid using applications from unknown sources and lock your device with a pattern, password, or PIN.
- Data transferred via Wi-Fi network could be leaked, so avoid transferring sensitive data in public areas or on open networks.
- The device manufacturer is not liable for any data transfers that infringe on copyrights, trademarks, intellectual property laws, or public decency ordinances.

# Table of Contents

## Getting started

- 18 Device layout
- 19 Buttons
- 20 Package contents
- 21 Installing the battery
- 23 Charging the battery
- 24 Checking the battery charge status
- 25 Inserting a memory card
- 27 Attaching a hand strap
- 28 Turning the device on and off
- 28 Adjusting the volume
- 29 Switching to silent mode

## Basics

- 30 Indicator icons
- 31 Using the touch screen
- 33 Control motions
- 37 Notifications
- 37 Quick setting panel
- 38 Home screen
- 40 Using applications
- 41 Applications screen
- 42 Help
- 42 Entering text
- 44 Connecting to a Wi-Fi network
- 45 Setting up accounts

- 45 Using the NFC Feature (Tag & Go)
- 46 Transferring files
- 48 Securing the device
- 49 Upgrading the device

## Camera: Basic functions

- 50 Launching Camera
- 52 Taking photos
- 52 Taking videos
- 53 Viewing photos and videos
- 53 Auto focus and auto exposure
- 53 Zooming in or out
- 54 Taking photos or videos with voice commands
- 54 Taking photos or videos with filter effects
- 55 Changing shooting options quickly
- 55 Reducing camera shake
- 56 Using face detection
- 57 Tips for taking clearer photos

## Camera: Shooting modes

- 61 Auto
- 61 Smart
- 73 Expert
- 76 My modes

## Camera: Shooting options and settings

- 77 Customising shooting options
- 77 EV (brightness)
- 78 ISO (sensitivity)
- 79 WB (light source)
- 81 Metering
- 81 Drive mode
- 82 Save as User mode
- 82 Photo size
- 82 Quality
- 82 Adjust image
- 82 Auto contrast
- 83 Flash
- 83 Timer
- 84 Focus
- 84 AF area
- 84 One touch shot
- 85 Face detection
- 85 AE Bracket set
- 86 OIS (anti-shake)
- 86 Video recording options
- 87 Sharing options
- 87 Camera settings

## Media

- 89 Gallery
- 93 Paper Artist
- 94 Video
- 95 Video Editor

- 96 Story Album
- 100 Xtremera
- 101 Music
- 103 YouTube

## Communication

- 104 Contacts
- 108 Email
- 109 Google Mail
- 111 Hangouts
- 111 Google+
- 111 G+ Photos
- 112 ChatON

## Web & network

- 113 Internet
- 114 Chrome
- 115 Bluetooth
- 116 Samsung Link
- 118 Group Play

## Application & media stores

- 120 Play Store
- 121 Samsung Apps
- 121 Play Books
- 122 Play Movies
- 122 Play Music
- 122 Play Newsstand
- 122 Play Games

## Utilities

- 123 S Memo
- 126 S Planner
- 128 Dropbox
- 128 Cloud
- 129 Drive
- 130 Clock
- 132 Calculator
- 132 S Voice
- 133 Google
- 133 Voice Search
- 134 My Files
- 135 Downloads

## Travel & local

- 136 Maps

## Settings

- 137 About Settings
- 137 Connections
- 140 My device
- 146 Accounts
- 147 More
- 149 Google Settings

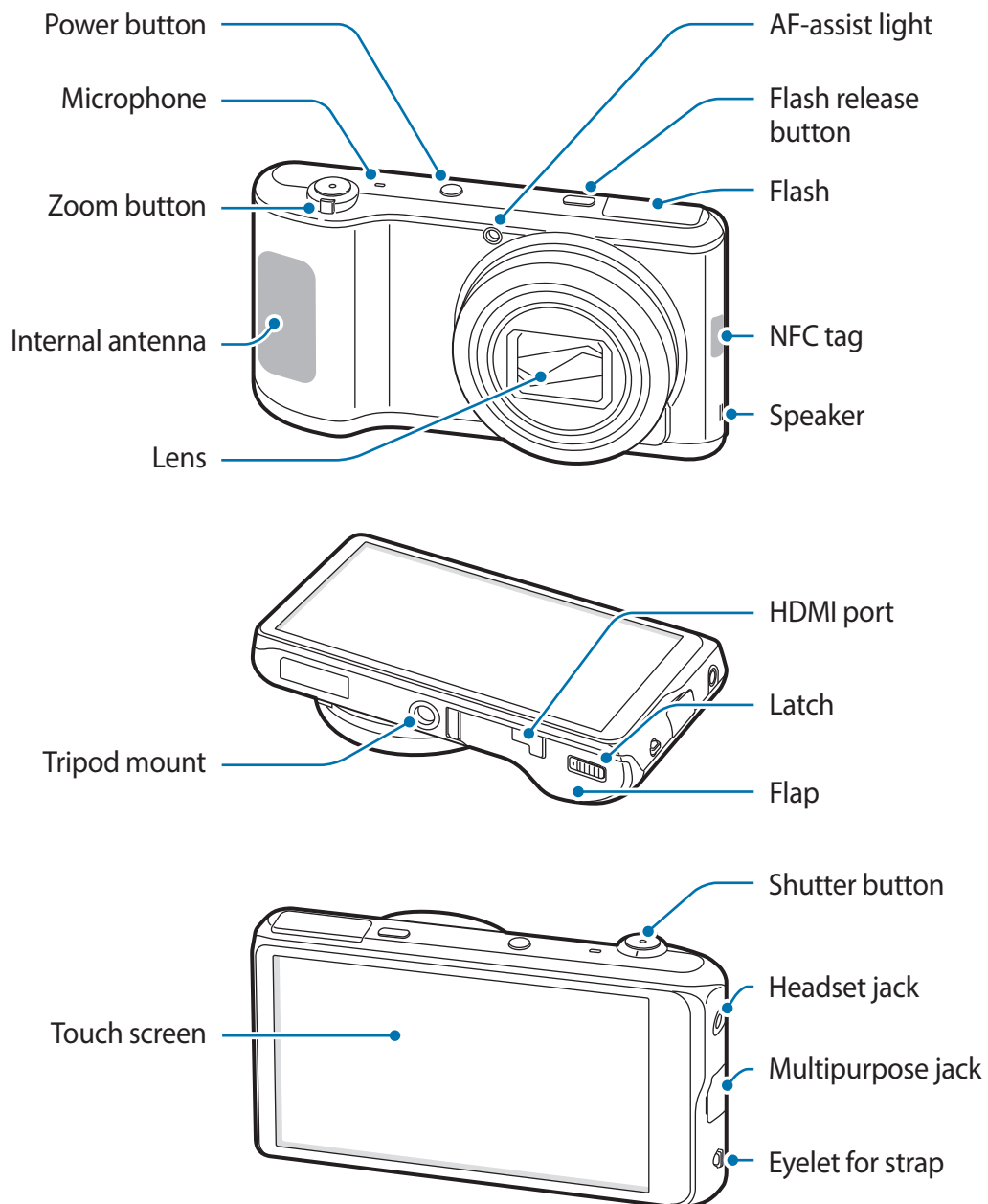
## Appendix

- 150 Troubleshooting
- 157 Using or storing the device
- 161 About the battery
- 164 Malware and viruses

## Cleaning the device

# Getting started

## Device layout












Do not use the device if it is cracked or broken. Broken glass or acrylic could cause injury to your hands and face. Take the device to a Samsung Service Centre to have it repaired.



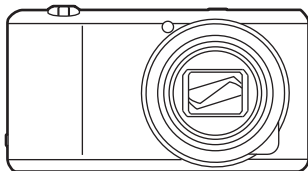
- Do not cover the antenna area with your hands or other objects, except when you are taking photos or videos. This may cause connectivity problems or drain the battery.
- Do not use a screen protector. This causes sensor malfunctions.
- Do not allow water to contact the touch screen. The touch screen may malfunction in humid conditions or when exposed to water.

## Buttons

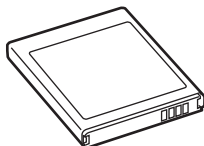
Button	Function
 <b>Power</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Press and hold to turn the device on or off.</li> <li>• Press and hold for more than 7 seconds to reset the device if it has fatal errors or hang-ups, or freezes.</li> <li>• Press to lock or unlock the device. The device goes into lock mode when the touch screen turns off.</li> </ul>
 <b>Flash release</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Press to pop the flash up.</li> </ul>
 <b>Shutter</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In the camera application, half-press to focus on the subject. When the subject is in focus, the focus frame turns green. Press to take the photo.</li> <li>• Press to turn the camera on.</li> </ul>
 <b>Zoom</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In the camera application, rotate to zoom in or out.</li> <li>• Rotate to adjust the device volume.</li> </ul>
 <b>Menu</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Tap to open a list of options available for the current screen.</li> <li>• Tap and hold on the Home screen to launch Google search.</li> </ul>
 <b>Home</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Tap to return to the Home screen.</li> <li>• Tap twice to launch <b>S Voice</b>.</li> <li>• Tap and hold to open the list of recent applications.</li> </ul>
 <b>Back</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Tap to return to the previous screen.</li> </ul>

## Package contents

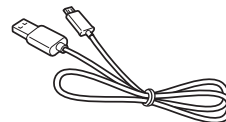
Check the product box for the following items:



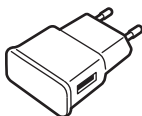
Device



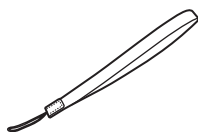
Battery



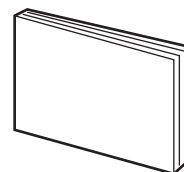
USB cable



USB power adaptor



Hand strap



Quick start guide /  
Quick reference guide



- The illustrations may differ from the actual items.
- The items supplied with the device and any available accessories may vary depending on the region.
- The supplied items are designed only for this device and may not be compatible with other devices.
- Appearances and specifications are subject to change without prior notice.

## Optional accessories

You can purchase and use the following accessories with your device:

Battery, battery charger, flip cover, case, hand strap, screen protector, and HDMI cable



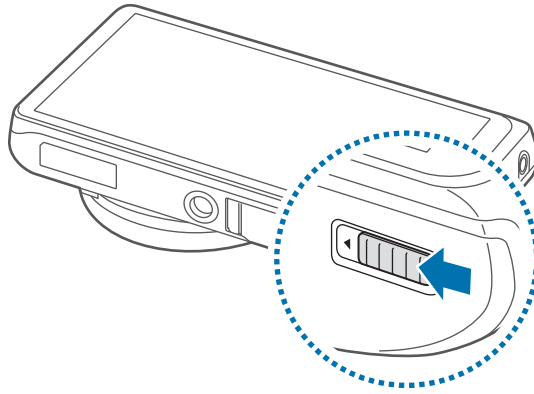
- For more information about available accessories, refer to the Samsung website.
- Make sure they are compatible with the device before purchase.
- Use only Samsung-approved accessories. Malfunctions caused by using unapproved accessories are not covered by the warranty service.
- Some TVs may not be compatible with the device due to differing HDMI specifications.



## Installing the battery

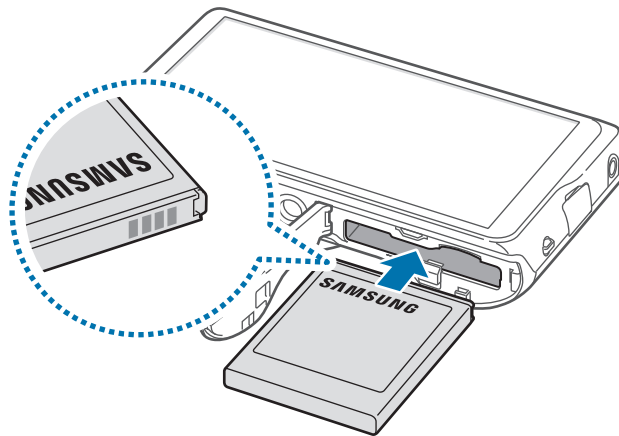
Insert the included battery.

- 1 Slide the latch and open the flap.



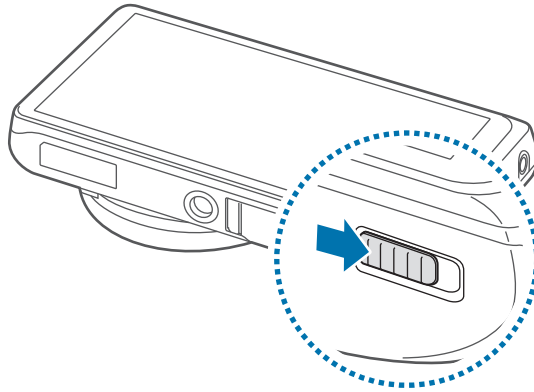
Do not bend or twist the battery cover excessively. Doing so may damage the cover.

- 2 Insert the battery.



Make sure to properly align the battery's gold-coloured contacts when inserting the battery.

### 3 Replace the flap and slide the latch.

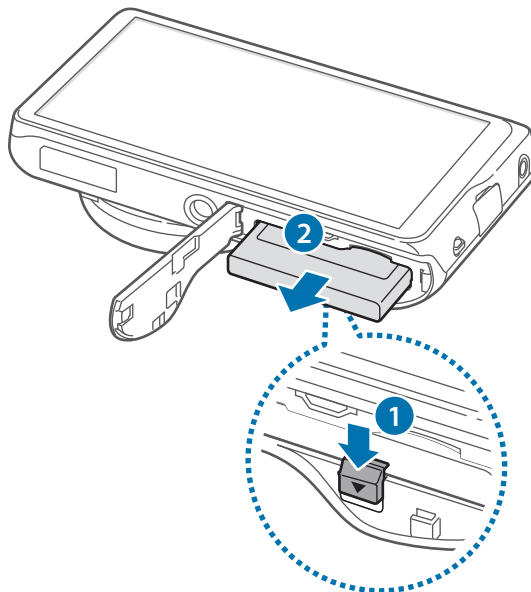


## Removing the battery



Turn off the device before removing the battery. If you remove the battery when the device is turned on, the device may malfunction.

Slide the battery lock to release the battery, and then pull it out.



## Charging the battery

Before using the device for the first time or when the battery has been unused for an extended period, you must charge the battery.

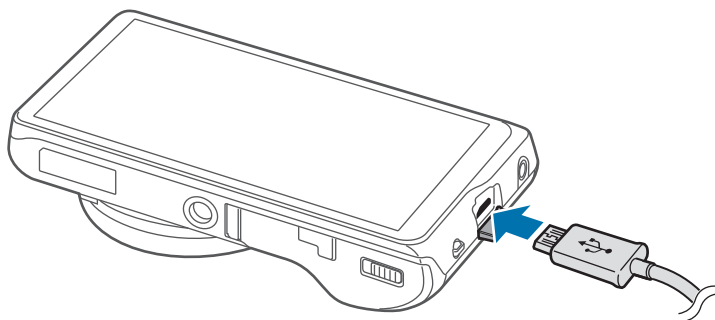


Use only Samsung-approved chargers, batteries, and cables. Unapproved chargers or cables can cause the battery to explode or damage the device.



- When the battery power is low, the battery icon appears empty.
- If the battery is completely discharged, the device cannot be turned on immediately when the charger is connected. Allow a depleted battery to charge for a few minutes before turning on the device.
- If you use multiple applications at once, network applications, or applications that need a connection to another device, the battery will drain quickly. To avoid disconnecting from the network or losing power during a data transfer, always use these applications after fully charging the battery.
- You can charge the device by connecting it to a computer with the supplied USB cable. You may not charge the device when it is connected to other devices, such as a set-top box or audio equipment.

Connect the USB cable to the USB power adaptor and then plug the end of the USB cable into the multipurpose jack.



Connecting the charger improperly may cause serious damage to the device. Any damage caused by misuse is not covered by the warranty.



- The device can be used while it is charging, but it may take longer to fully charge the battery.
- If the device receives an unstable power supply while charging, the touch screen may not function. If this happens, unplug the charger from the device.
- While charging, the device may heat up. This is normal and should not affect the device's lifespan or performance. If the battery gets hotter than usual, the charger may stop charging.
- If the device is not charging properly, take the device and the charger to a Samsung Service Centre.
- Overcharging or over-discharging batteries may shorten their lifespans.

After fully charging, disconnect the device from the charger. First unplug the charger from the device, and then unplug it from the electric socket.



Do not remove the battery before removing the charger. This may damage the device.



To save energy, unplug the charger when not in use. The charger does not have a power switch, so you must unplug the charger from the electric socket when not in use to avoid wasting power. The charger should remain close to the electric socket and easily accessible while charging.

## Checking the battery charge status

When you charge the battery while the device is off, the following icons will show the current battery charge status:



Charging



Fully charged

## Reducing the battery consumption

Your device provides options that help you save battery power. By customising these options and deactivating features in the background, you can use the device longer between charges:

- When you are not using the device, switch to sleep mode by pressing the Power button.
- Close unnecessary applications with the task manager.
- Deactivate the Bluetooth feature.
- Deactivate the Wi-Fi feature.
- Deactivate auto-syncing of applications.
- Decrease the backlight time.
- Decrease the brightness of the display.

## Inserting a memory card

You can use an optional memory card as an external storage location.

Your device accepts memory cards with maximum capacities of 64 GB. Depending on the memory card manufacturer and type, some memory cards may not be compatible with your device.

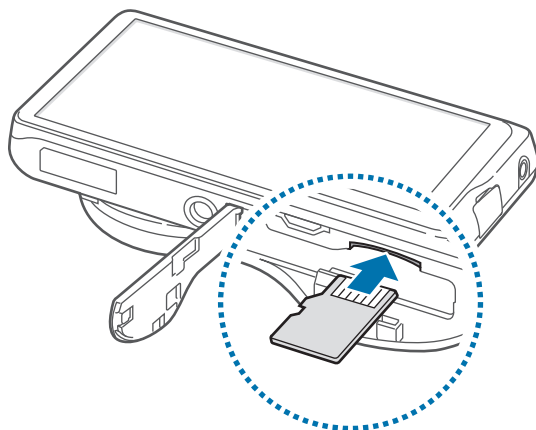


- Some memory cards may not be fully compatible with the device. Using an incompatible card may damage the device or the memory card, or corrupt the data stored in it.
- Use caution to insert the memory card right-side up.



- The device supports the FAT and the exFAT file systems for memory cards. When inserting a card formatted in a different file system, the device asks to reformat the memory card.
- Frequent writing and erasing of data shortens the lifespan of memory cards.
- When inserting a memory card into the device, the memory card's file directory appears in the **SD memory card** folder.

- 1 Slide the latch and open the flap.
- 2 Insert a memory card with the gold-coloured contacts facing upwards.



- 3 Push the memory card into the slot until it locks in place.
- 4 Replace the flap and slide the latch.

## Removing the memory card

Before removing the memory card, first unmount it for safe removal.

On the Home screen, tap **Apps** → **Settings** → **More** → **Storage** → **Unmount SD card**.

Push the memory card until it disengages from the device, and then pull it out.



Do not remove the memory card while the device is transferring or accessing information. Doing so can cause data to be lost or corrupted or damage to the memory card or device. Samsung is not responsible for losses that result from the misuse of damaged memory cards, including the loss of data.

## Formatting the memory card

A memory card formatted on a computer may not be compatible with the device. Format the memory card on the device.

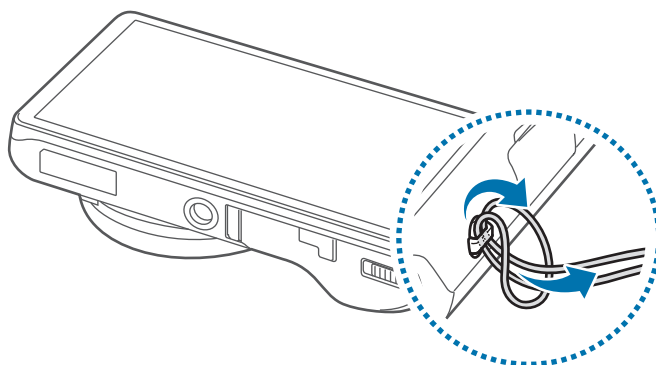
On the Home screen, tap **Apps** → **Settings** → **More** → **Storage** → **Format SD card** → **Format SD card** → **Erase everything**.



Before formatting the memory card, remember to make backup copies of all important data stored on the device. The manufacturer's warranty does not cover loss of data resulting from user actions.

## Attaching a hand strap

Slide the small end of a hand strap through the slot and push the large end through the loop.

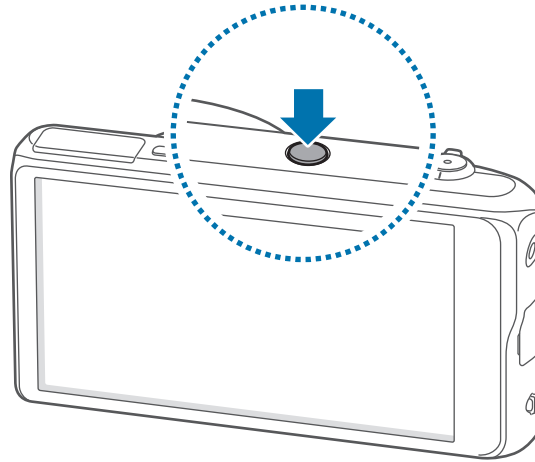


Do not swing your device by the strap. This may cause injury to yourself or others or damage to your device.

## Turning the device on and off

When turning on the device for the first time, follow the on-screen instructions to set up your device.

Press and hold the Power button for a few seconds to turn the device on.



- Follow all posted warnings and directions from authorised personnel in areas where the use of wireless devices is restricted, such as aeroplanes and hospitals.
- Press and hold the Power button and tap **Flight mode** to disable the wireless features.

To turn off the device, press and hold the Power button, and then tap **Power off**.

## Adjusting the volume

Rotate the Zoom button to adjust the notification sound volume, or to adjust the sound volume when playing music or video.



## Switching to silent mode











Use one of the following methods:

- Rotate the Zoom button anti-clockwise until it switches to silent mode.
- Press and hold the Power button, and then tap **Mute** or **Vibrate**.
- Open the notifications panel at the top of the screen, and then tap **Sound** or **Vibrate**.

# Basics

## Indicator icons

The icons displayed at the top of the screen provide information about the status of the device. The icons listed in the table below are most common.

Icon	Meaning
	Wi-Fi connected
	Bluetooth feature activated
	GPS activated
	Connected to computer
	Alarm activated
	Mute mode activated
	Vibration mode activated
	Flight mode activated
	Error occurred or caution required
	Battery power level

## Using the touch screen

Use only fingers to use the touch screen.



- Do not allow the touch screen to come into contact with other electrical devices. Electrostatic discharges can cause the touch screen to malfunction.
- To avoid damaging the touch screen, do not tap it with anything sharp or apply excessive pressure to it with your fingertips.

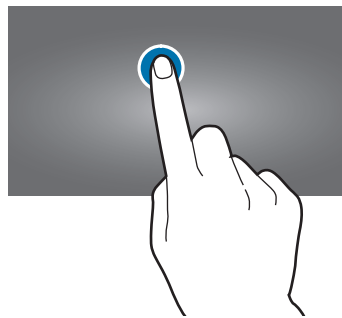


- The device may not recognise touch inputs close to the edges of the screen, which are outside of the touch input area.
- Leaving the touch screen idle for extended periods may result in afterimages (screen burn-in) or ghosting. Turn off the touch screen when you do not use the device.

## Finger gestures

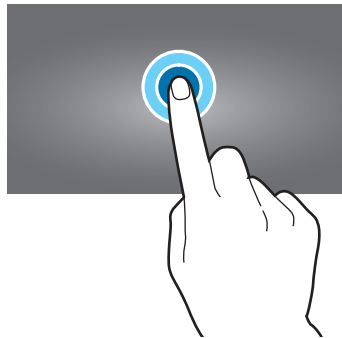
### Tapping

To open an application, to select a menu item, to press an on-screen button, or to enter a character using the on-screen keyboard, tap it with a finger.



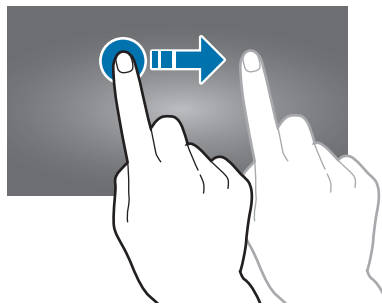
## Tapping and holding

Tap and hold an item for more than 2 seconds to access available options.



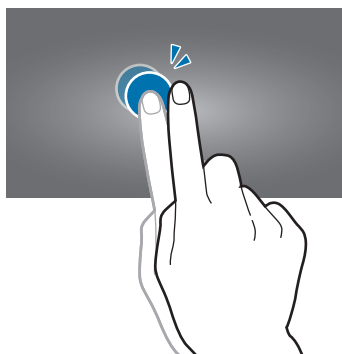
## Dragging

To move an icon, thumbnail, or preview to a new location, tap and hold it and drag it to the target position.



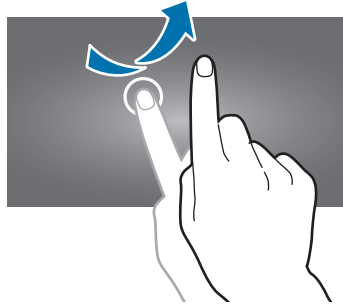
## Double-tapping

Double-tap on a webpage or image to zoom in a part. Double-tap again to return.



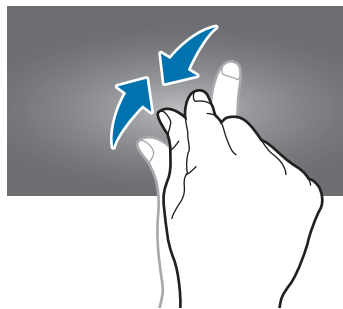
## Flicking

Flick left or right on the Home screen or the Applications screen to see another panel. Flick up or down to scroll through a webpage or a list, such as contacts.



## Pinching

Spread two fingers apart on a webpage, map, or image to zoom in a part. Pinch to zoom out.



## Control motions

Simple motions allow easy control of the device.

Before using motions, make sure the motion feature is activated. On the Home screen, tap **Apps** → **Settings** → **My device** → **Motion**, and then drag the **Motion** switch to the right.



Excessive shaking or impact to the device may result in unintended inputs. Control motions properly.

## Rotating the screen

Many applications allow display in either portrait or landscape orientation. Rotating the device causes the display to automatically adjust to fit the new screen orientation.



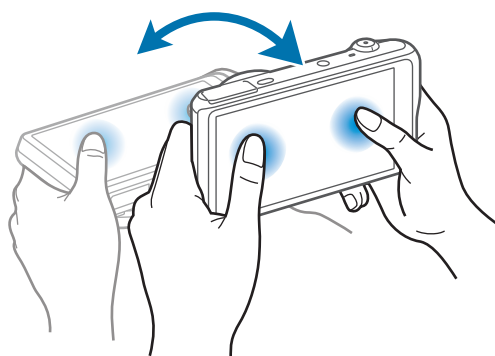
To prevent the display from rotating automatically, open the notifications panel and deselect **Screen rotation**.



- Some applications do not allow screen rotation.
- Some applications display a different screen depending on the orientation. The calculator turns into a scientific calculator when rotated to landscape.

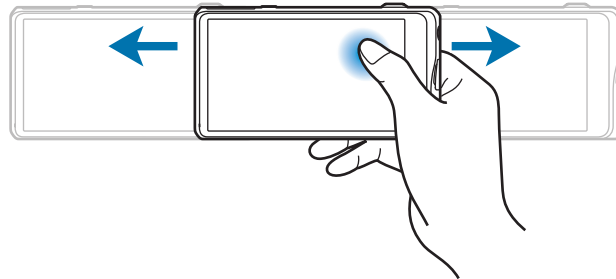
## Tilting

Tap and hold two points on the screen, and then tilt the device back and forth to zoom in or out.



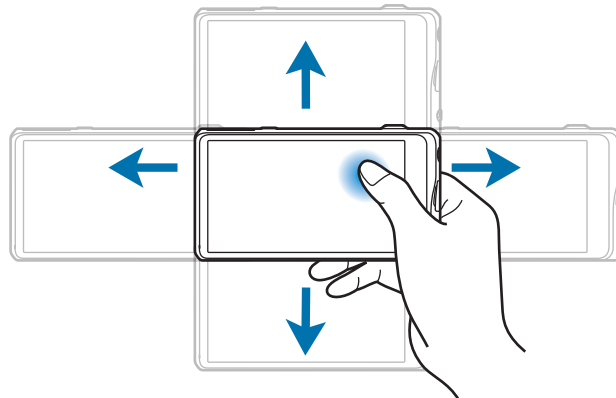
## Panning to move

Tap and hold an item, and then move the device to the left or right to move the item to another panel on the Home screen or the Applications screen.



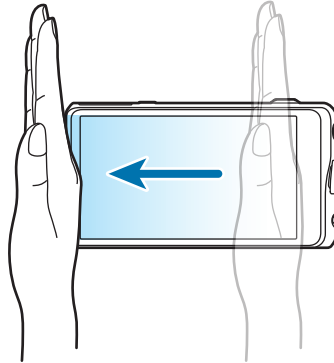
## Panning to browse

When an image is zoomed in, tap and hold a point on the screen, and then move the device in any direction to browse the image.



## Sweeping

Sweep your hand across the screen to capture a screenshot. The image is saved in **Gallery** → **Screenshots**.



## Covering

Cover the screen with a palm to pause media playback.






## Notifications

Notification icons appear on the status bar at the top of the screen to report calendar events, device status, and more. Drag down from the status bar to open the notifications panel. Scroll the list to see additional alerts. To close the notifications panel, drag up the bar that is at the bottom of the screen.


## Quick setting panel

From the quick setting panel, you can view your device's current settings. Drag down from the status bar, tap  to open the quick setting panel, and then use the following options:

- **Wi-Fi:** Activate or deactivate the Wi-Fi feature.
- **GPS:** Activate or deactivate the GPS feature.
- **Sound:** Activate or deactivate silent mode. You can vibrate or mute your device in silent mode.
- **Screen rotation:** Allow or prevent the interface from rotating when you rotate the device.
- **Bluetooth:** Activate or deactivate the Bluetooth feature.
- **Blocking mode:** Activate or deactivate blocking mode. In blocking mode, the device will block notifications. To select which notifications will be blocked, tap **Settings** → **My device** → **Blocking mode**.
- **Hands-free mode:** Activate or deactivate hands-free mode.
- **Sync:** Activate or deactivate auto-syncing of applications.
- **Flight mode:** Activate or deactivate flight mode.



The available options may vary depending on the region.

To rearrange the options on the quick setting panel, open the quick setting panel, tap , tap and hold an item, and then drag the item to another location.

## Home screen

The Home screen is the starting point to access all of the device's features. It displays indicator icons, widgets, folders, and others.

The Home screen can have multiple panels. To view other panels, scroll left or right.

## Rearranging items

### Adding an application icon

On the Home screen, tap **Apps**, tap and hold an application icon, and then drag it into a panel preview.

### Adding an item

Tap and hold the empty area on the Home screen, and then select one of the following categories:

- **Apps and widgets:** Add widgets or applications to the Home screen.
- **Folder:** Create a new folder.
- **Page:** Add a new panel to the Home screen.

### Moving an item

Tap and hold an item and drag it to a new location. To move it to another panel, drag it to the side of the screen.

### Removing an item

Tap and hold an item, and drag it to the rubbish bin that appears at the top of the Home screen. When the rubbish bin turns red, release the item.

## Rearranging panels

### Adding a new panel

Tap  → **Edit page** → .

### Moving a panel

Tap  → **Edit page**, tap and hold a panel preview, and then drag it to a new location.

### Removing a panel

Tap  → **Edit page**, tap and hold a panel preview, and then drag it to the rubbish bin.

## Setting wallpaper

Set an image or photo stored in the device as wallpaper for the Home screen.

On the Home screen, tap  → **Set wallpaper** → **Home screen**, and then select one of the following:

- **Gallery:** See photos taken by the device's camera or images downloaded from the Internet.
- **Live wallpapers:** See animated images.
- **Wallpapers:** See wallpaper images.

Then, select an image and tap **Set wallpaper**. Or, select an image, resize it by dragging the frame, and then tap **Done**.

## Using widgets

Widgets are small applications that provide convenient functions and information on your Home screen. To use them, add widgets from the widgets panel to the Home screen.



The widgets available may vary depending on the region.

## Adding widgets to the Home screen

On the Home screen, tap **Apps** → **Widgets**. Scroll left or right on the widgets panel, and then tap and hold a widget to add it to the Home screen. Put it on a location you want, resize it by dragging the frame if necessary, and then tap anywhere on the screen to save the location of the widget.


## Using applications

This device can run many different types of applications, ranging from media to Internet applications.

## Opening an application





On the Home screen or the Applications screen, select an application icon to open it.

## Opening from recently-used applications

Tap and hold  to open the list of recently-used applications. Select an application icon to open.

## Closing an application

Close applications not in use to save battery power and maintain device performance.

Tap and hold , tap , and then tap **End** next to an application to close it. To close all running applications, tap **End all**. Alternatively, tap and hold , and then tap .


## Applications screen

The Applications screen displays icons for all applications, including any new applications installed.

On the Home screen, tap **Apps** to open the Applications screen.


To view other panels, scroll left or right.

## Rearranging applications

Tap  → **Edit**, tap and hold an application, and then drag it to a new location. To move it to another panel, drag it to the side of the screen.

## Organising with folders

Put related applications together in a folder for convenience.

Tap  → **Edit**, tap and hold an application, and then drag it to **Create folder**. Enter a folder name and then tap **OK**. Put applications into the new folder by dragging, and then tap **Save** to save the arrangement.

## Rearranging panels

Pinch on the screen, tap and hold a panel preview, and then drag it to a new location.

## Installing applications

Use application stores, such as Samsung Apps, to download and install applications.

## Uninstalling applications


Tap  → **Uninstall**, and then select an application to uninstall it.



Default applications that come with the device cannot be uninstalled.

## Sharing applications

Share downloaded applications with other users via email, Bluetooth, or other methods.

Tap  → **Share app**, select applications, tap **Done**, and then select a sharing method. The next steps vary depending on the method selected.

## Help

Access help information to learn how to use the device and applications or configure important settings.

Tap **Help** on the Applications screen. Tap , and then select an item.

## Entering text

Use the Samsung keyboard or the voice input feature to enter text.



- Text entry is not supported in some languages. To enter text, you must change the input language to one of the supported languages.
- Text input mode may differ depending on the region.

## Changing the keyboard type


Tap any text field, open the notifications panel, tap **Choose input method**, and then select the type of keyboard to use.

## Using the Samsung keyboard

### Setting input languages

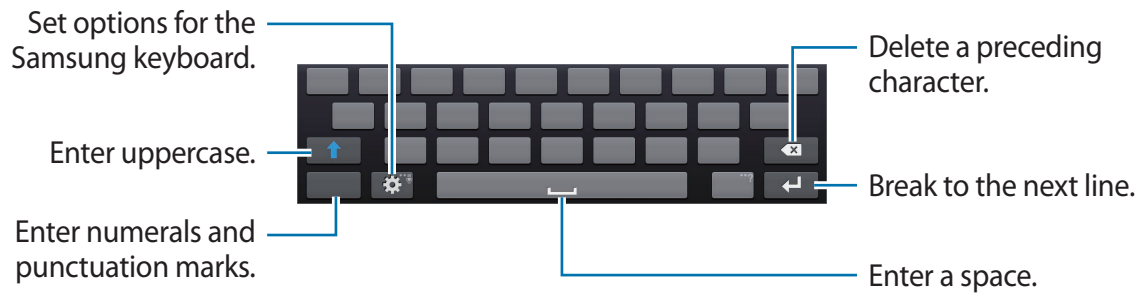
On the keyboard, tap  → **Select input languages**, and then select languages.

## Changing the keyboard layout


Tap , and change the keyboard layout.



On the 3x4 keyboard, a key has three or four characters. To enter a character, tap repeatedly the key corresponding to the character.



## Entering uppercase

Tap  before entering a character. For all caps, tap it twice.

## Changing language keyboards



Add languages to the keyboard, and then slide the space key left or right to change language keyboards.

## Entering text by voice

Activate the voice input feature and then speak into the microphone. The device displays what you speak.

To change the language or add languages for the voice recognition, tap the current language.

## Copying and pasting

Tap and hold over text, drag  or  to select more or less text, and then tap **Copy** to copy or **Cut** to cut. The selected text is copied to the clipboard.

To paste it into a text entry field, tap and hold at the point where it should be inserted, and then tap **Paste**.

## Connecting to a Wi-Fi network

Connect the device to a Wi-Fi network to use the Internet or share media files with other devices. (p. 137)

### Turning Wi-Fi on and off

Open the notifications panel, and then tap **Wi-Fi** to turn it on or off.



- Your device uses a non-harmonised frequency and is intended for use in all European countries. The WLAN can be operated in the EU without restriction indoors, but cannot be operated outdoors.
- Turn off Wi-Fi to save the battery when not in use.

### Joining Wi-Fi networks

On the Applications screen, tap **Settings** → **Connections** → **Wi-Fi**, and then drag the **Wi-Fi** switch to the right.

Select a network from the list of detected Wi-Fi networks, enter a password if necessary, and then tap **Connect**. Networks that require a password appear with a lock icon. After the device connects to a Wi-Fi network, the device will automatically connect to it any time it is available.

### Adding Wi-Fi networks

If the desired network does not appear in the networks list, tap **Add Wi-Fi network** at the bottom of the networks list. Enter the network name in **Network SSID**, select the security type and enter the password if it is not an open network, and then tap **Connect**.

### Forgetting Wi-Fi networks

Any network that has ever been used, including the current network, can be forgotten so the device will not automatically connect to it. Select the network in the networks list, and then tap **Forget**.



## Setting up accounts

Google applications, such as Play Store, require a Google account, and Samsung Apps requires a Samsung account. Create Google and Samsung accounts to have the best experience with the device.

### Adding accounts

Follow the instructions that appear when opening a Google application without signing in to set up a Google account.

To sign in with or sign up for a Google account, on the Applications screen, tap **Settings** → **Accounts** → **Add account** → **Google**. After that, tap **New** to sign up, or tap **Existing**, and then follow the on-screen instructions to complete the account setup. More than one Google account can be used on the device.

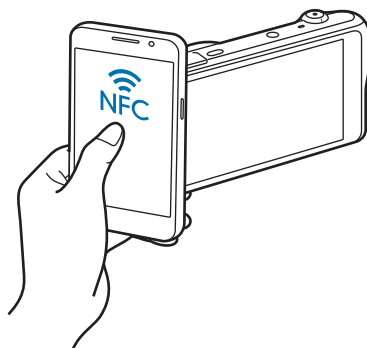
Set up a Samsung account as well.

### Removing accounts

On the Applications screen, tap **Settings** → **Accounts**, select an account name under **My accounts**, select the account to remove, and then tap **Remove account**.

## Using the NFC Feature (Tag & Go)

Place the smart phone's NFC antenna near your device's NFC tag to launch the feature for using the smart phone as a remote shutter. You can also transfer files to an NFC-enabled device while viewing them.





- This feature is supported by NFC-enabled smart phones running Android OS. It is recommended that you use the latest version. This feature is not available for iOS devices.
- You should install Samsung SMART CAMERA App on your phone or device before using this feature. You can download the application from Samsung Apps or the Google Play Store. Samsung SMART CAMERA App is compatible with Samsung camera models manufactured in 2013 or later.
- To read an NFC tag, place the NFC-enabled device near your device's NFC tag for more than 2 seconds.
- Do not modify the tag information in any way.

## Turning on the remote viewfinder feature

On the Applications screen, tap **Camera**. Read a tag from an NFC-enabled device to turn on the remote viewfinder feature.

## Transferring photos or videos

On the Applications screen, tap **Gallery**. Read a tag from an NFC-enabled device to transfer the current file to the smart phone automatically.

- To transfer multiple files, select files from the thumbnails view, and then read a tag from an NFC-enabled device.

## Transferring files

Move audio, video, image, or other types of files from the device to the computer, or vice versa.



The following file formats are supported by some applications. Some file formats are not supported depending on the version of the device's software or the computer operating system.


- Music: mp3, m4a, 3ga, aac, ogg, oga, wav, wma, amr, awb, flac, mid, midi, xmf, mxmf, imy, rtttl, rtx, and ota
- Image: bmp, gif, jpg, and png
- Video: 3gp, mp4, avi, wmv, flv, and mkv
- Document: doc, docx, dot, dotx, xls, xlsx, xltx, csv, ppt, pptx, pps, ppsx, pot, potx, pdf, hwp, txt, asc, and rtf

## Connecting with Samsung Kies

Samsung Kies is a computer application that manages media contents and personal information with Samsung devices. Download the latest Samsung Kies from the Samsung website.

- 1 Connect the device to the computer using the USB cable.  
Samsung Kies launches on the computer automatically. If Samsung Kies does not launch, double-click the Samsung Kies icon on the computer.
- 2 Transfer files between your device and the computer.  
Refer to the Samsung Kies help for more information.

## Connecting as a media device

- 1 Connect the device to the computer using the USB cable.
  - 2 Open the notifications panel, and then tap **Connected as a media device** → **Media device (MTP)**.  
Tap **Camera (PTP)** if your computer does not support Media Transfer Protocol (MTP) or not have any appropriate driver installed.
  - 3 Transfer files between your device and the computer.
-  Do not disconnect the USB cable while transferring files. It may result in device malfunction or data loss.
  - Do not disconnect the USB cable while playing back files. You must stop playback before disconnecting.
  - Your device may not connect to the computer when you use a USB hub. Connect your device directly to the computer's USB port.

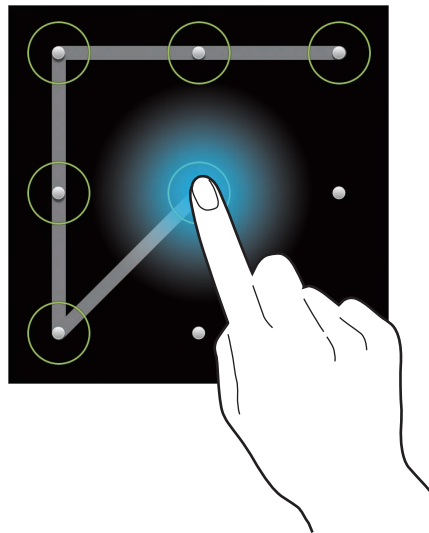
## Securing the device

Prevent others from using or accessing personal data and information stored in the device by using the security features. The device requires an unlock code whenever unlocking it.

### Setting a pattern

On the Applications screen, tap **Settings** → **My device** → **Lock screen** → **Screen lock** → **Pattern**.

Draw a pattern by connecting four dots or more, and then draw the pattern again to verify it. Set a backup unlock PIN to unlock the screen when you forget the pattern.



### Setting a PIN

On the Applications screen, tap **Settings** → **My device** → **Lock screen** → **Screen lock** → **PIN**.

Enter at least four numbers, and then enter the password again to verify it.

### Setting a password

On the Applications screen, tap **Settings** → **My device** → **Lock screen** → **Screen lock** → **Password**.

Enter at least four characters including numbers and symbols, and then enter the password again to verify it.

## Unlocking the device

Turn on the screen by pressing the Power button, and enter the unlock code.



If the unlock code is forgotten, take the device to a Samsung Service Centre to reset it.

## Upgrading the device

The device can be upgraded to the latest software.



This feature may not be available depending on the region.

## Upgrading over the air

The device can be directly upgraded to the latest software by the firmware over-the-air (FOTA) service.

On the Applications screen, tap **Settings** → **More** → **About device** → **Software update** → **Update**.

## Upgrading with Samsung Kies

Launch Samsung Kies and connect the device to the computer. Samsung Kies automatically recognises the device and shows available updates in a dialogue box, if any. Click the Update button in the dialogue box to start upgrading. Refer to the Samsung Kies help for details on how to upgrade.



- Do not turn off the computer or the device, or disconnect the USB cable while the device is upgrading.
- While upgrading the device, do not connect other media devices to the computer. Doing so may interfere with the update process.

# Camera: Basic functions

## Launching Camera

Use this application to take photos or videos.

Tap **Camera** on the Applications screen. Alternatively, press the Shutter button.

Use **Gallery** to view photos and videos taken with the device. (p. 89)



- The camera automatically shuts off when unused.
- Make sure that the lens is clean. Otherwise, the device may not work properly in some modes that require high resolutions.

### Camera etiquette

- Do not take photos or videos of other people without their permission.
- Do not take photos or videos where legally prohibited.
- Do not take photos or videos in places where you may violate other people's privacy.

## Learning the preview screen



## Learning icons

The icons displayed on the preview screen provide information about current shooting options and settings. The icons listed in the table below are the most common.

Icon	Meaning
	Shutter speed
	Aperture value
	Exposure value
	ISO sensitivity
	Timer
	Flash
	Voice recognition
	Geotagging
	Share shot
	Buddy photo share
	ChatON photo share


## Closing Camera

In Shooting mode, tap to close the camera application and return to the Home screen.





## Taking photos


Half-press the Shutter button to focus on the subject. When the subject is in focus, the focus frame turns green. Press the Shutter button to take the photo.

Or, tap the image on the preview screen where the camera should focus. When the subject is in focus, the focus frame turns green. Tap  to take the photo.

## Taking videos

Tap  to take a video. To stop recording, tap .

While recording, tap  to take a photo.

While recording, tap where you want to focus to change the focus. To set the camera to focus automatically, tap .



- You can take videos up to 20 minutes at one time.
- When using a memory card with a slow writing speed, the device may not be able to save the video properly. It may stop recording, or recorded video frames may become corrupted.
- Memory cards with slow writing speeds do not support high-resolution video. To record high-resolution video, use memory cards with faster writing speeds (micro SDHC Class10 or higher).
- The video frame size may appear smaller depending on video resolution and frame rate.
- If you set the image stabiliser option, the image stabiliser sound may be recorded.
- If the zoom function is activated when taking videos, the camera may record the noise of the zoom operating. To decrease the zoom noise, activate the quiet zoom feature. (p. 86)
- If you change the shooting angle of the camera suddenly while taking a video, the camera may not be able to record images accurately.
- If you tap the screen to change the focus manually while taking a video, the touch sound may be recorded.



## Viewing photos and videos

To view taken photos or videos, tap the gallery icon. Scroll left or right to view the next or previous image. (p. 89)

## Auto focus and auto exposure

You can adjust camera focus and exposure automatically by touching the screen.

In Shooting mode, tap the desired area to focus on. The focus frame moves to the desired area and an icon appears at the upper right corner of the focus frame. Then, drag the frame to separate the AF frame and the AE frame. Drag each frame to the desired location.

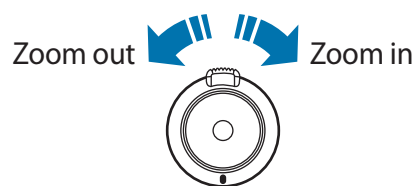
To lock the focus or the exposure, tap and hold the respective frame. The locked frame cannot be moved and is reset after shooting.

To merge the AF frame and the AE frame, drag a frame to the other one to make them overlap.

## Zooming in or out

Rotate the Zoom button clockwise or spread two fingers apart on the screen to zoom in.

Rotate the Zoom button anti-clockwise or pinch your fingers together on the screen to zoom out.







- The zoom in/out effect is available when using the zoom feature while shooting video.
- When using the zoom function, the lens moves back and forth to adjust the focus before it sets the precise zoom ratio that you intend to use.
- To maintain a natural view angle, the zoom ratio increases in larger increments as it gets higher.

## Taking photos or videos with voice commands

Use the voice recognition to take photos or videos with voice commands.

Tap  → . Say a shooting command, such as Smile, Cheese, or Record video.

To check more voice commands for controlling the camera, tap  → .

## Taking photos or videos with filter effects

Use the filter effects to take unique photos or videos.








Tap  and select a filter effect.

- **No effect:** Do not apply an effect.
- **Vignette:** This effect applies the retro-looking colours, high contrast, and strong vignette effect of Lomo cameras.
- **Greyscale:** This effect makes the image black and white.
- **Sepia:** This effect red-shifts the background scenery.
- **Vintage:** This effect gives the image a vintage look and feel.
- **Faded colours:** This effect fades the colour of the image.
- **Turquoise:** This effect applies a soft turquoise colour effect.
- **Tint:** This effect applies a colour tint effect.
- **Cartoon:** This effect applies a cartoon painting effect.

- **Moody:** This effect applies a mono cartoon painting effect.
- **Rugged:** This effect applies a rugged effect.
- **Oil pastel:** This effect applies a pastel painting effect.
- **Fisheye:** This effect blackens the edges of the frame and distorts objects to imitate the visual effect of a fisheye lens.

## Changing shooting options quickly

Tap  to change shooting options quickly. The available options vary by mode.

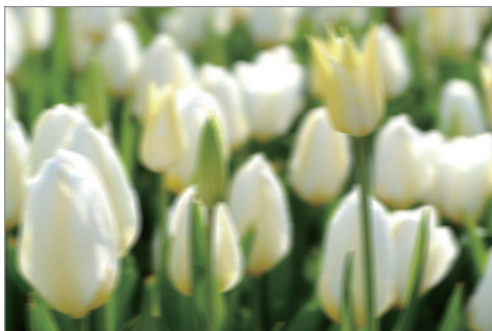
- : Configure settings for Camera.
- : Activate or deactivate the flash.
- : Use this to set delayed-time shots.
- : Select a folder for saving photos or videos. To create a new folder, tap .
- : Activate or deactivate the voice recognition to take photos.
- : Activate or deactivate the sharing options.

## Reducing camera shake

Use the Optical Image Stabiliser (OIS) feature to reduce or eliminate blurriness from camera shake.

Tap **MODE** → **Expert** → **P**, **A**, **S**, or **M** to access one of the expert modes.

In expert mode, tap  →  → **OIS (anti-shake)**, and select an option.



Before correction








After correction

## Using face detection

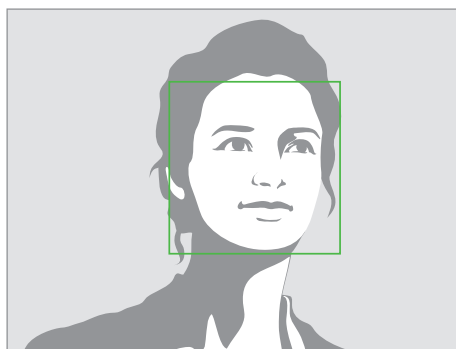
### Taking a smile shot

The camera automatically detects a smiling face, and releases the shutter.

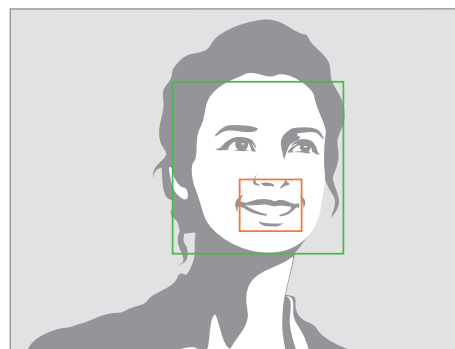
Tap **MODE** → **Expert** → **P**, **A**, **S**, or **M** to access one of the expert modes.

In expert mode, tap  →  → **Face detection** → **Smile shot**. Or, in beauty face mode, tap  →  →  → **Face detection** → **Smile shot**.

Aim the camera at a human subject, and press the Shutter button. When the camera detects a smiling face, the camera automatically takes the photo.



Face detected



Smile detected

### Detecting eye blinking

If the camera detects closed eyes, it automatically takes more photos in succession.

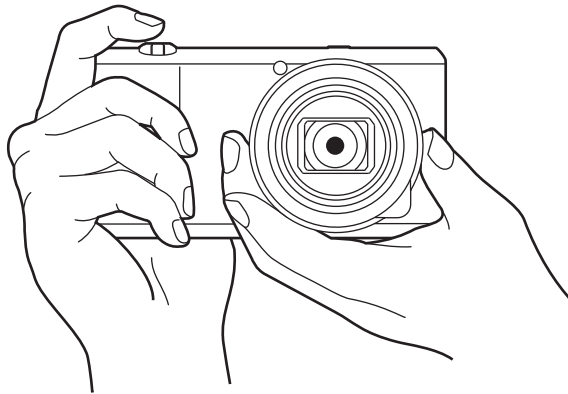
Tap **MODE** → **Expert** → **P**, **A**, **S**, or **M** to access one of the expert modes.

In expert mode, tap  →  → **Face detection** → **Blink detection**.

Aim the camera at a human subject. When the camera detects a human face, a white frame appears around the face. If the eyes are closed at the exact moment when the Shutter button is pressed, a pop-up window appears on the screen.

## Tips for taking clearer photos

### Holding the camera correctly



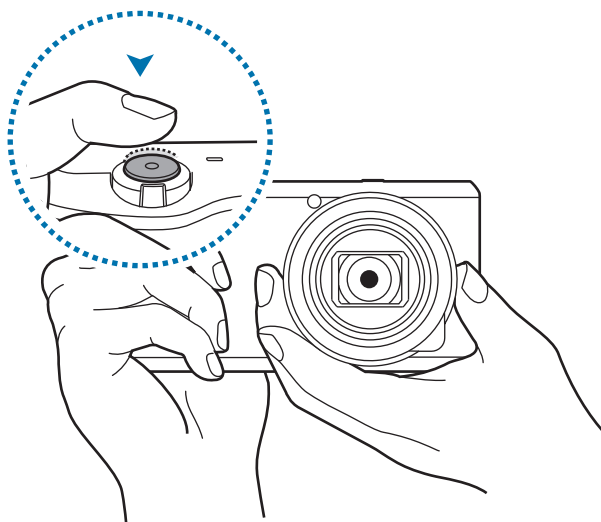
Make sure not to block the screen, lens, flash, or microphone.



Make sure not to expose the lens to direct sunlight. This may discolour the image sensor, or cause it to malfunction.

### Half-pressing the Shutter button

Press the Shutter button halfway down to adjust the focus. The camera adjusts the focus, exposure, and white balance automatically, and the focus frame turns green. The focus frame turns red if not focused.



## Reducing camera shake

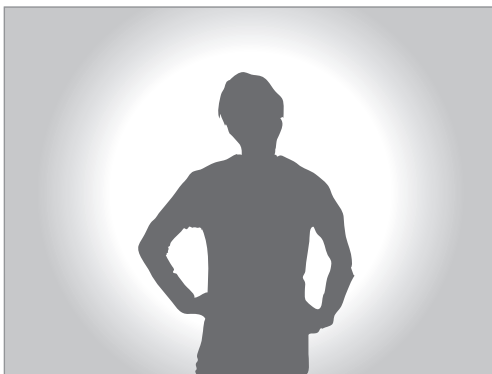
Set the Optical Image Stabiliser (OIS) option to reduce camera shake optically. (p. 55)



## Keeping the subject in focus

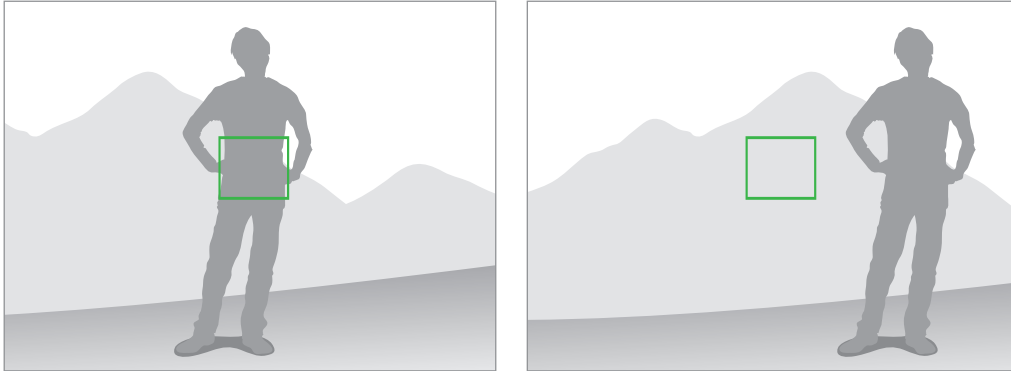
Focusing on the subject may be difficult in the following conditions:

- When the contrast between the subject and background is low. For example, the subject is wearing clothing that is similar in colour to the background.
- The light behind the subject is too bright.
- The subject is shiny or reflective.
- The subject includes horizontal patterns, such as blinds.
- The subject is not positioned in the centre of the frame.



## Using the focus lock

Half-press the Shutter button to focus. When the subject is focused, you can change the composition. When you are ready, press the Shutter button to take the photo.



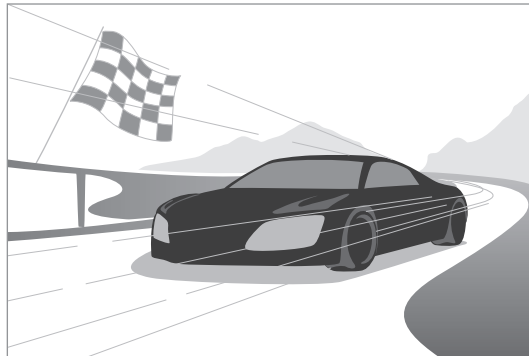
## When taking photos in low-light conditions

- Turn the flash on to take photos in low-light conditions. (p. 83)
- Adjust the ISO sensitivity. (p. 78)



## When subjects are moving rapidly

Use the continuous shooting option to take photos of moving subjects. (p. 63)



To take several photos continuously, use memory cards with faster writing speeds (micro SDHC Class10 or higher).






# Camera: Shooting modes

## Auto

Use this to take photos with scene modes selected automatically by the camera. In this mode, the camera recognises surrounding conditions and automatically adjusts factors that contribute to exposure, including the shutter speed, aperture value, metering, and white balance. As the camera controls most of the functions, some shooting options are limited. This mode is useful for capturing quick snapshots with the least amount of adjustment.

Tap **MODE** → **Auto**.

To display an icon for a scene mode at the top right of the preview screen when you half-press the Shutter button, tap  →  →  → **Detection display** → **On**.



- The camera may detect different scenes, even the same subjects, depending on external factors, such as camera shake, lighting, and distance to the subject.
- If the camera does not recognise an appropriate scene mode, it uses the default settings for this mode.
- Even if it detects a face, the camera may not select a portrait mode depending on the subject's position or lighting.
- In this mode, the camera consumes more battery power due to constant changing of settings when selecting appropriate modes.

## Smart

Use this to take photos with predefined settings for various scenes.

## Smart mode suggest

Use this to take photos with one of the smart modes that the camera automatically suggests.

Tap **MODE** → **Smart** → **Smart mode suggest**.

Half-press the Shutter button, select a mode from the suggested list, and then press the Shutter button to take a photo. If you do not select a mode from the suggested list, the camera will take a photo in Auto mode.

To reset the selected mode, tap .

## Beauty face

Use this to take photos with lightened faces for gentler images.

Tap **MODE** → **Smart** → **Beauty face**.

Press the Shutter button to take a photo. Tap a face, and adjust effects. To switch between the original and the adjusted photo, tap **Before & After**. Tap **Save** to save the photo.

To set the camera to automatically adjust effects, tap  →  →  → **Enhance face** → **Off**.

## Best photo

Use this to take multiple photos in a short time, and then choose the best photos among them.

Tap **MODE** → **Smart** → **Best photo**.

Press the Shutter button to take multiple photos. Tap and hold the thumbnails of the photos to save, and then tap **Save**.

## Selfie alarm

Use this to detect a face in a preset area and to take multiple photos automatically. You can then select the best photo.

Tap **MODE** → **Smart** → **Selfie alarm**.

Drag the frame to set a detection area. Compose your shot with the lens facing you. The more the face fits inside the detection area, the faster the camera beeps. Listen to the beeps to guide you as you adjust the composition. When the face is completely inside the detection area, the camera emits a warning tone and then takes multiple photos automatically. Tap and hold the thumbnails of the photos to save, and then tap **Save**.

## Continuous shot

Use this to take a series of photos of moving subjects.

Tap **MODE** → **Smart** → **Continuous shot**.

While holding the camera steady, press and hold the Shutter button to take several photos continuously.



To take several photos continuously, use memory cards with faster writing speeds (micro SDHC Class10 or higher).

## Best face

Use this to take multiple group shots at the same time and combine them to create the best possible image.

Tap **MODE** → **Smart** → **Best face**.

Press the Shutter button to take multiple photos. To get the best shot, hold the camera steady and remain still while taking photos. Tap the yellow frame on each face, and choose the best individual face for the subject. After choosing a face for each individual, tap **Save** to merge the images into a single photo, and save it.



## Colour bracket

Use this to take 3 photos with different colour effects continuously.

Tap **MODE** → **Smart** → **Colour bracket**.

## Kids shot

Use this to play a funny sound to get a kid's attention when shooting.

Tap **MODE** → **Smart** → **Kids shot**.

Half-press the Shutter button. The camera emits the attention sound. Press the shutter button to take 5 consecutive photos.

To change the attention sound, tap .

## Landscape

Use this to take photos of blue skies and landscapes with richer colours.

Tap **MODE** → **Smart** → **Landscape**.



## Dawn

Use this to take photos of the dawn sky in subtle colours.

Tap **MODE** → **Smart** → **Dawn**.

## Snow

Use this to take brighter photos of snow scenery.

Tap **MODE** → **Smart** → **Snow**.

## Macro

Use this to take photos of very close subjects.

Tap **MODE** → **Smart** → **Macro**.



Hold the camera steady to prevent blurry photos.

## Food

Use this to take photos of food in more colourful tones.

Tap **MODE** → **Smart** → **Food**.

## Party/Indoor

Use this to take crisp indoor photos.

Tap **MODE** → **Smart** → **Party/Indoor**.

## Action freeze

Use this to take photos of subjects moving at high speed.

Tap **MODE** → **Smart** → **Action freeze**.



Use in bright daylight is recommended.

## Rich tone(HDR)

Use this to take photos without losing details in bright and dark areas. The camera automatically takes several photos with various exposure values, and then merges them into one photo. The photo taken at the original exposure value is saved also.

Tap **MODE** → **Smart** → **Rich tone(HDR)**.

While holding the camera steady, press the Shutter button to take multiple photos.

To set the device to save only the final result, tap ▶ → ⚙️ → 📷 → **Save as** → **Rich tone only**.



Without effect



With effect




- This feature may be affected by camera shake, lighting, movement of the subject, and shooting environment.
- The flash is disabled in this feature.
- When taking a photo of moving subjects, an afterimage may appear.
- Using a tripod is recommended.

## Panorama

Use this to take wide panoramic photos.

Tap **MODE** → **Smart** → **Panorama**.

Press the Shutter button to take a photo, and then move the camera in one direction. When the blue frame aligns with the preview screen, the camera automatically takes another shot in the panoramic sequence. To stop shooting, tap . Photos are automatically combined into one panoramic image.





- Avoid the following for best results:
  - Moving the camera too quickly or too slowly.
  - Moving the camera too little to take the next photo.
  - Moving the camera at irregular speeds.
  - Shaking the camera.
  - Changing the camera direction while taking a photo.
  - Taking photos in low-light conditions.
  - Taking photos of moving subjects.
  - Taking photos where the brightness or colour of the light changes.
  - Taking photos of a subject in front of unrecognisable backgrounds, such as empty skies or plain walls.
- Photos taken are automatically saved, and shooting is stopped under the following conditions:
  - Changing the distance from the subject while shooting.
  - Moving the camera too quickly.
  - Not moving the camera.
- The camera may stop taking photos due to composition or movement within the scene.
- The camera may not take the last scene entirely if you stop moving the camera at the exact position where you want the scene to end. To take the entire scene, move the camera slightly beyond the position you want the scene to end.

## Waterfall

Use this to take photos of waterfalls.

Tap **MODE** → **Smart** → **Waterfall**.



The image may appear blurry due to the slow shutter speed when the camera takes photos. Make sure to use a tripod.



## Animated photo

Use this to create a photo in which selected objects move by freezing or animating moving objects automatically detected by the camera.

Tap **MODE** → **Smart** → **Animated photo**.

Press the Shutter button to take a photo. Tap **Animate** or **Freeze**, and then rub the screen to animate or freeze the detected moving objects. Tap **Trim** to adjust the range to trim, or **Direction** to change the direction of the animation. Then, tap **Save** to save the photo.

## Drama

Use this to take a series of photos and combine them to create an image that shows trails of the movement.

Tap **MODE** → **Smart** → **Drama**.

While holding the camera steady, press the Shutter button to take several photos continuously. Select photos to save, and then tap **Save**.



To get the best shot, follow these tips. The camera may not take photos properly in other shooting conditions.

- Hold the camera steady and remain still while taking photos.
- Take photos of a subject that is moving in one direction.
- Take photos with backgrounds that are free of moving objects.
- Avoid taking photos of a subject and background with similar colours.
- Avoid taking photos of a subject that is too close or too far away to fit within the screen or that is too long such as a bus or a train.

## Eraser

Use this to erase moving objects in the background.

Tap **MODE** → **Smart** → **Eraser**.

Press the Shutter button to take a series of photos. The camera erases traces of movement from a moving object. To restore the original photo, tap **Show moving objects**, and then tap the highlighted area. Tap **Save** to save the photo.



- Hold the camera steady and remain still while taking photos.
- When taking photos of an object and background with similar colours, the camera may not recognise all of the movement.
- When taking photos of an object that is moving very little or moving a great deal, the camera may not recognise all of the movements.
- If there are multiple subjects moving in the background, the camera may not recognise all of the movement.

## Sound & shot

Use this to take a photo with sound.

Tap **MODE** → **Smart** → **Sound & shot**.

The camera records 9 seconds of audio after taking a photo.

To set the camera to record sound before or after taking a photo, tap .

## Interval

Use this to set the interval and number of photos to take automatically for an extended period.

Tap **MODE** → **Smart** → **Interval**.

Set the interval and number of shots, tap **Set**, and then press the Shutter button or tap **Start**.



To save battery power, the device turns on and takes photos between intervals only.

## Silhouette

Use this to take photos of dark shapes against a light background.

Tap **MODE** → **Smart** → **Silhouette**.



To maximise the silhouette effect, take photos at a location that is bright.

## Sunset

Use this to take photos of the sunset.

Tap **MODE** → **Smart** → **Sunset**.

## Night

Use this to take photos in low-light conditions, without using the flash.

Tap **MODE** → **Smart** → **Night**.

While holding the camera steady, press the Shutter button to take 3 photos. Photos are automatically merged into a single photo.



The image may appear blurry due to the slow shutter speed when the camera takes photos. Make sure to use a tripod.

## Fireworks

Use this to take photos of fireworks.

Tap **MODE** → **Smart** → **Fireworks**.



The image may appear blurry due to the slow shutter speed when the camera takes photos. Make sure to use a tripod.

## Light trace

Use this to take photos of the light trailing in low-light conditions.

Tap **MODE** → **Smart** → **Light trace**.



The image may appear blurry due to the slow shutter speed when the camera takes photos. Make sure to use a tripod.

## Expert

Use this to take photos and videos with manual adjustment of various shooting options, including the shutter speed, aperture value, exposure value, and ISO sensitivity.



## Adjusting major shooting options

Tap one of the major shooting options displayed at the top of the screen, and then drag left or right until the desired value is shown. To confirm the adjustment, tap an empty area on the screen or half-press the Shutter button.

## Program mode

In this mode, the camera automatically adjusts the shutter speed and aperture value so that an optimal exposure value can be achieved. This mode is useful when you want to capture shots of constant exposure while being able to adjust other settings.

Tap **MODE** → **Expert** → **P**, and set the desired shooting options.

## Aperture priority mode

In this mode, the camera automatically calculates shutter speed according to the aperture value you choose. You can adjust the depth of field (DOF) by changing the aperture value. This mode is useful for taking portraits and landscape shots.

Tap **MODE** → **Expert** → **A**, and set the desired shooting options.



Large depth of field



Small depth of field



In low-light settings, you may need to increase the ISO sensitivity to prevent blurry photos.

## Shutter priority mode

In this mode, the camera automatically adjusts the aperture value according to the shutter speed you choose. This mode is useful for taking photos of fast-moving subjects or for creating tracer effects in a photo.

Tap **MODE** → **Expert** → **S**, and set the desired shooting options.



Slow shutter speed



Fast shutter speed



To compensate for the reduced amount of light allowed by fast shutter speeds, adjust the aperture and let in more light. If your photos are still too dark, increase the ISO sensitivity.

## Manual mode

This mode lets you adjust the shutter speed and aperture value manually. In this mode, you can fully control the exposure of your photos. This mode is useful in controlled shooting environments, such as a studio, or when it is necessary to fine-tune camera settings. This mode is also recommended for shooting night scenes or fireworks.



Tap **MODE** → **Expert** → **M**, and set the desired shooting options.



- If you set a high ISO value or open the shutter for a long time, image noise may increase.
- Use a tripod and shutter release to prevent your camera from shaking.
- The longer you open the shutter, the longer it takes to save a photo. Do not turn the camera off while the camera saves a photo.

## User mode

Use this to create and save your own shooting mode by adjusting settings.

Tap **MODE** → **Expert** → **P / A / S / M**, and set the desired shooting options. Then, tap  →  → **Save as User mode** to save the current settings.

To access user mode, tap **MODE** → **Expert** → **USER**.

## My modes

Use this to register your favourite shooting modes and select them conveniently. You can register up to 10 modes.




Tap **MODE** → **My modes** → **Edit**, and then select your favourite shooting modes. After completing your selection, tap **Done** to save it.



# Camera: Shooting options and settings

## Customising shooting options

Various shooting options are provided with your camera. With them, you can take more customised photos and videos.

Tap  to access shooting options. Depending on the mode selected, you may tap  → .

Select an option, and then save it.



- Available options and default settings may differ depending on the shooting mode and shooting conditions.
- Depending on the option selected, some settings may not be available.

## EV (brightness)

The camera automatically sets the exposure by measuring the levels of light from the photo's composition and the position of a subject. If the exposure set by the camera is higher or lower than you expected, you can adjust the exposure value manually.

Tap **MODE** → **Expert** → **P**, **A**, **S**, or **M** to access one of the expert modes.

In expert mode, tap  →  → **EV (brightness)**, and select an option.



Darker (-)



Neutral (0)



Brighter (+)



- If the appropriate exposure value cannot be decided, use the **AE BKT** option to take multiple photos with different exposure values.
- Taking photos with higher exposure value may result in blurry photos due to the slower shutter speed.

## ISO (sensitivity)

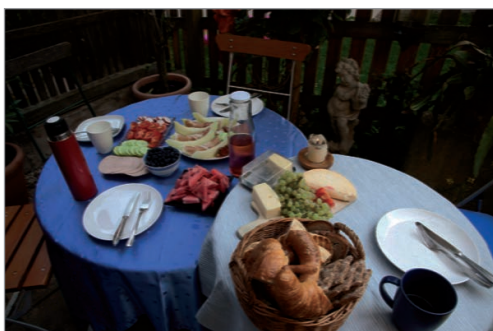
The ISO sensitivity value represents the sensitivity of the camera to light.

The higher the ISO sensitivity, the more sensitive the camera is to light. Consequently, by selecting a higher ISO sensitivity, you can take photos in dim or dark places at faster shutter speeds. However, this may increase electronic noise and result in a grainy photo.

Tap **MODE** → **Expert** → **P**, **A**, **S**, or **M** to access one of the expert modes.

In expert mode, tap  →  → **ISO (sensitivity)**, and select an option.

### Examples



ISO 100



ISO 400



ISO 800



ISO 3200



Increase the ISO value in places where flash use is prohibited. You can take a clear photo by setting a high ISO value without having to secure more light.

## WB (light source)





White balance represents the light source that influences on the colour of a photo.

The colour of a photo depends on the type and quality of the light source. If you want the colour of your photo to be realistic, select an appropriate lighting condition to calibrate the white balance, such as **Auto WB**, **Daylight**, **Cloudy**, **Tungsten**, or adjust colour temperature manually.

You can also adjust colour for the preset light sources so that the colours of the photo match the actual scene under mixed lighting conditions.


Tap **MODE** → **Expert** → **P**, **A**, **S**, or **M** to access one of the expert modes.

In expert mode, tap  →  → **WB (light source)**, and then select an option.

- **Auto WB:** Use automatic settings depending on the lighting conditions.
- **Daylight:** Use this for sunny days. This option results in photos closest to the natural colours of the scene.
- **Cloudy:** Use this for cloudy days or in shadows. Photos taken on cloudy days tend to be more bluish than on sunny days. This option offsets that effect.
- **Fluorescent\_H:** Use this when shooting under a daylight fluorescent lamp, especially for white fluorescent light.
- **Fluorescent\_L:** Use this when shooting under a daylight fluorescent lamp, especially for white fluorescent light of very white hues.
- **Tungsten:** Use this under incandescent bulbs or halogen lamps. Incandescent tungsten bulbs tend to have a reddish hue. This option offsets that effect.
- **Custom set:** Use this to set a custom white balance. You can manually set the white balance by tapping , and then shooting a white sheet of paper. Fill the spot metering circle with the paper and set the white balance.
- **Colour temperature:** Use this to manually adjust the colour temperature of the light source. Colour temperature is a measurement in degrees Kelvin that indicates the specific type of light source. You can get a warmer photo with a higher value and a cooler photo with a lower value. Tap , and then drag the slider or tap  or  to adjust the value.

## Customising preset white Balance options

You can also customise preset white Balance options.

Tap  next to a white balance option. Tap the arrows or tap an area on the screen to adjust the value on the coordinates.

- **G:** Green
- **B:** Blue
- **A:** Amber
- **M:** Magenta

### Examples



Auto WB



Daylight



Fluorescent



Tungsten



## Metering

The metering mode refers to the method the camera measures the quantity of light.

The camera measures the amount of light in a scene, and in many of its modes, uses the measurement to adjust various settings. For example, if a subject looks darker than its actual colour, the camera takes an overexposed photo of it. If a subject looks lighter than its actual colour, the camera takes an underexposed photo of it.

Tap **MODE** → **Expert** → **P, A, S, or M** to access one of the expert modes.

In expert mode, tap  →  → **Metering**, and then select an option.

- **Multi:** The camera calculates the amount of light in multiple areas. When light is sufficient or insufficient, the camera adjusts the exposure by averaging the overall brightness of the scene. This mode is suitable for general photos.
- **Spot:** The camera calculates the amount of light in the centre. When you take a photo in conditions where there is a strong backlight behind a subject, the camera adjusts the exposure to shoot a subject correctly.
- **Centre-weighted:** The camera calculates a broader area than the camera does in spot mode. It sums up the amount of light in the centre portion of the shot (60–80 %) and that of the rest of the shot (20–40 %).

## Drive mode

Use this option to set the shooting method. Continuous shots are recommended for shooting the rapid motion of fast moving subjects, such as racing cars.

Tap **MODE** → **Expert** → **P, A, S, or M** to access one of the expert modes.

In expert mode, tap  →  → **Drive mode**, and select an option.

- **Single shot:** Use this to take a single photo.
- **Continuous shot:** Use this to take a series of photos of moving subjects.
- **AE BKT:** Use the auto exposure bracketing option to take 3 consecutive photos with different exposure values (one a step lighter, the original, and one a step darker). Use a tripod to prevent blurry photos. You can adjust the interval range in AE Bracket set. (p. 85)



- Saving photos may take longer depending on the memory card's capacity and performance when taking photos continuously.
- Using a tripod is recommended when taking photos continuously.

## Save as User mode

Use this to save the current settings as your own shooting mode.

Tap **MODE** → **Expert** → **P**, **A**, **S**, or **M** to access one of the expert modes.

In expert mode, tap  →  → **Save as User mode**.

## Photo size



As you increase the resolution, your photo will include more pixels, so it can be printed on larger paper or displayed on a larger screen. When you use a high resolution, the file size will also increase. Select a low resolution for photos that will be displayed in a digital picture frame or uploaded to the web.

Tap  (or  → ) →  → **Photo size**, and select an option.

## Quality

Use this option to select a higher photo quality for better photos. Selecting a higher photo quality also increases the file size.





Tap **MODE** → **Expert** → **P**, **A**, **S**, or **M** to access one of the expert modes.

In expert mode, tap  →  → **Quality**, and select an option.

## Adjust image

Use this option to adjust the colour, saturation, sharpness, or contrast of your photos.

Tap **MODE** → **Expert** → **P**, **A**, **S**, or **M** to access one of the expert modes.

In expert mode, tap  →  → **Adjust image**, and drag the slider or tap  or  for each value.

## Auto contrast





Use this option to improve contrast automatically in photos with backlit subjects or high contrast between subjects and backgrounds.

Tap **MODE** → **Expert** → **P**, **A**, **S**, or **M** to access one of the expert modes.

In expert mode, tap  →  → **Auto contrast**, and select an option.

## Flash

To take a realistic photo of a subject, the amount of light should be constant. When the light source varies, you can use a flash and supply a constant amount of light.

Press the Flash release button to open the flash. Tap  (or  → ) →  → **Flash**, and select an option.





- **Off:** Use this to turn the flash off.
- **Auto:** Use this to automatically use the flash. The flash fires when the subject or background is dark.
- **Auto & red-eye:** Use this to prevent a red glow in the subject's eyes.
- **Fill in:** Use this to always use the flash.
- **Slow sync:** Use this to keep details of the background.
- **Red-eye fix:** Use this to correct a red glow in the subject's eyes.



- There is an interval between two bursts of the flash. Do not move until the flash fires a second time.
- If light from the flash is reflected, or if a substantial amount of dust is in the air, tiny spots may appear in the photo.

## Timer

Use this option for delayed-time shots.


Tap  (or  → ) →  → **Timer**, and select an option.

Press the Shutter button to start the timer. The camera takes photos after a specified length of time. Press the Shutter button to cancel the timer.

## Focus

Use this option to select a focus mode appropriate to the subject.

Tap **MODE** → **Expert** → **P**, **A**, **S**, or **M** to access one of the expert modes.

In expert mode, tap  →  → **Focus**, and select an option.



- **Auto focus:** Use this to capture a still subject. When you half-press the Shutter button, the focus fixes in the focus area. The area turns green when the focus is achieved.
- **Macro:** Use this to capture very close objects.

## AF area

Use this option to change the positions of the focus area.

Generally, cameras focus on the nearest subject. When there are a lot of subjects, however, unwanted subjects can be in focus. To prevent unwanted subjects from being in focus, change the focus area so that a desired subject is in focus. You can get a clearer and sharper photo by selecting an appropriate focus area.

Tap **MODE** → **Expert** → **P**, **A**, **S**, or **M** to access one of the expert modes.

In expert mode, tap  →  → **AF area**, and select an option.

- **Centre AF:** Use this to focus on the centre of the frame.
- **Multi AF:** Use this to focus on multiple areas. The photo is divided into two or more areas, and the camera obtains focus points of each area and displays a green rectangle in places where focus is set correctly. It is recommended for scenery photos.

## One touch shot

Use this option to take a photo with the touch of your finger.

Tap  (or  → ) →  → **One touch shot**, and select an option.



As you tap on the subject, the camera focuses on the subject and takes a photo automatically.



## Face detection

Use this option to select a face detection mode.

Tap **MODE** → **Expert** → **P**, **A**, **S**, or **M** to access one of the expert modes.

In expert mode, tap  →  → **Face detection**, and select an option. Or, in beauty face mode, tap  →  →  → **Face detection**, and select an option.

- **Off:** Use this to turn this option off.
- **Normal:** Use this to measure exposure on a human face.
- **Smile shot:** Use this to recognise and helps taking people's smiling faces. (p. 56)
- **Blink detection:** Use this to detect closed eyes and automatically takes additional photos. (p. 56)



- When a face is detected, the camera tracks the face automatically.
- This feature may not be effective in the following conditions:
  - The subject is too far from the camera.
  - The lighting is too bright or too dark.
  - The subject is not facing the camera.
  - The subject is wearing sunglasses or a mask.
  - The subject's facial expression changes drastically.
  - The subject is backlit, or the lighting conditions are unstable.

## AE Bracket set

Use this option to adjust the exposure interval range of the bracketed photos.

Tap **MODE** → **Expert** → **P**, **A**, **S**, or **M** to access one of the expert modes.

In expert mode, tap  →  → **AE Bracket set**, and select an option.

## OIS (anti-shake)

Use the Optical Image Stabiliser (OIS) option to reduce or eliminate blurriness from camera shake.

Tap **MODE** → **Expert** → **P**, **A**, **S**, or **M** to access one of the expert modes.

In expert mode, tap  →  → **OIS (anti-shake)**, and select an option.



- This feature may not function properly in the following conditions:
  - When you move the camera to follow a moving subject.
  - If the camera is shaking too much.
  - When the shutter speed is slow (for example, when taking photos in low-light conditions).
  - If the battery power is low.
  - When you take close-up photos.
- Using this feature with a tripod may blur photos because of vibration from the OIS sensor. Deactivate this feature when using a tripod.
- The display may be blurry if the camera is hit or dropped. When this happens, restart the device.

## Video recording options

Tap  (or  → ) → , and configure the settings for video recording.





- **Movie size:** Select a resolution for videos. Use higher resolution for higher quality. Higher resolution videos take up more memory.
- **Multi motion:** Set the playback speed of videos.



If you select an option other than **x1**, sound will not be recorded.

- **Sound:** Use this to decrease zoom noise or mute sounds when taking videos.
- **Windcut:** Remove some surrounding noise in addition to wind noise.

## Sharing options

Share photos as they are taken by setting sharing options. Tap  (or  → ) → , and select an option.

- **Share shot:** Send a photo directly to another device via Wi-Fi Direct.



You cannot use this feature when the **Signature** setting is activated.

- **Buddy photo share:** Set the camera to recognise a person's face that you have tagged in a photo and send it to that person.
- **ChatON photo share:** Send a photo directly to another device via ChatON.



You cannot use this feature when the **Signature** setting is activated.

- **Remote viewfinder:** Set a mobile device to control the camera remotely.

## Camera settings

Tap  (or  → ) → , and configure the settings for Camera.

- **Power-on mode:** Select the default camera mode that launches when the device is turned on.
- **Signature:** Use this to add a signature to the image.



You cannot use this feature when the **Date/time Imprint** setting is activated.

- **GPS tag:** Attach a GPS location tag to the photo. Activate this feature when taking photos to create albums in **Story Album**.



- To improve GPS signals, avoid shooting in locations where the signal may be obstructed, such as between buildings or in low-lying areas, or in poor weather conditions.
- Your location may appear on your photos when you upload them to the Internet. To avoid this, deactivate the GPS tag setting.

- **Date/time Imprint:** Use this to imprint the time and date on photos.



You cannot use this feature when the **Signature** setting is activated.

- **Voice control:** Activate or deactivate the voice recognition to take photos or videos.
- **Guidelines:** Display a guide to help you compose a scene.
- **Description:** Display mode descriptions.
- **Storage:** Select the memory location for storage.
- **Contextual filename:** Set the camera to add contextual tags, such as location information, to filenames.



To use **Contextual filename**, you must activate the **GPS tag** setting.

- **Auto brightness:** Set the camera to automatically adjust the brightness of the display.
- **Review:** Briefly display photos or videos taken.
- **Auto screen off:** Set the length of time the device waits before turning off the display's backlight.
- **Beep:** Activate or deactivate beep sounds.
- **Camera function volume:** Adjust the camera volume, such as beep or shutter sounds.
- **AF lamp:** Use this to activate the AF-assist light in low-light conditions.
- **Reset:** Reset the camera settings.

# Media

## Gallery

Use this application to view images and videos.

Tap **Gallery** on the Applications screen.



- Some file formats are not supported depending on the software installed on the device.
- Some files may not play properly depending on the encoding method used.
- This application may not be available depending on the region.

## Viewing images

Launching **Gallery** displays available folders. When another application, such as **Email**, saves an image, the **Download** folder is automatically created to contain the image. Likewise, capturing a screenshot automatically creates the **Screenshots** folder. Select a folder to open it.

In a folder, images are displayed by creation date. Select an image to view it in full screen. Scroll left or right to view the next or previous image.

## Zooming in and out

Use one of the following methods to zoom in an image:

- Double-tap anywhere to zoom in.
- Spread two fingers apart on any place to zoom in. Pinch to zoom out, or double-tap to return.

## Viewing images using the motion feature

Use the motion feature to execute a function with particular motion.


On the Applications screen, tap **Settings** → **My device** → **Motion**, drag the **Motion** switch to the right, and then turn on features by ticking.

To stop using a motion feature, deselect features.

## Playing videos


Video files show the  icon on the preview. Select a video to watch it and tap .

## Trimming segments of a video

Select a video and tap  → **Trim**. Move the start bracket to the desired starting point, move the end bracket to the desired ending point, and then save the video.

## Editing images

When viewing an image, tap  and use the following functions:

- **Edit:** Edit the image.
- **Slideshow:** Start a slideshow with the images in the current folder.
- **Favourite:** Add the image to favourites.
- **Photo frame:** Use this to add a frame and a note to an image. The edited image is saved in the **Photo frame** folder.
- **Photo note:** Use this to write a note on the back of the image. Tap  to edit the note.
- **Signature:** Add a signature to the image. Signatures are saved in the **My Signature** folder.
- **Copy to clipboard:** Copy to clipboard.
- **Rotate left:** Rotate anticlockwise.
- **Rotate right:** Rotate clockwise.
- **Crop:** Resize the blue frame to crop and save the image in it.
- **Buddy photo share:** Send the image to a person whose face is tagged in the image.
- **Print:** Print the image via a USB or Wi-Fi connection. Some printers may not be compatible with the device.
- **Rename:** Rename the file.
- **Set as:** Set the image as wallpaper or a contact image.
- **Settings:** Change the Gallery settings.

## Modifying images

When viewing an image, tap  → **Edit** → **Photo Wizard** and use the following functions:




- **Rotate:** Rotate the image.
- **Crop:** Crop the image.
- **Colour:** Adjust the brightness, contrast, or saturation of the image.
- **Effect:** Apply effects to the image.
- **Portrait:** Correct red-eye, adjust and retouch faces, or make background blurry.
- **Sticker:** Attach stickers.
- **Drawing:** Draw on the image.
- **Frame:** Apply frames to the image.

## Favourite files

When viewing a file, tap  → **Favourite** to add the file to the favourites list.




## Deleting files

Use one of the following methods:


- In a folder, tap  → **Select item**, select files by ticking, and then tap .
- When viewing a file, tap .

## Sharing files


Use one of the following methods:

- In a folder, tap  → **Select item**, select files by ticking, and then tap  to send them to others.
- When viewing a file, tap  to send it to others or share it via social network services.

## Setting as wallpaper

When viewing an image, tap  → **Set as** to set the image as wallpaper or to assign it to a contact.

## Tagging faces


When viewing an image, tap  → **Settings**, and then tick **Face tag**. A yellow frame appears around the recognised face on an image. Tap the face, tap **Add name**, and then select or add a contact.

When the face tag appears on an image, tap the face tag and use available options, such as sending emails.





Face recognition may fail depending on the face angle, face size, skin colour, facial expression, light conditions, or accessories the subject is wearing.

## Using Tag Buddy

When viewing an image, tap  → **Settings** → **Tag buddy**, and then drag the **Tag buddy** switch to the right to display a contextual tag (weather, location, date, and person's name) when opening an image.

## Organising with folders

Create a folder to organise images or videos stored in the device. You can copy or move files from one folder to another.

To create a new folder, tap . Enter a name for the folder, tap **OK**, and then tick images or videos. Tap and hold any selected image or video, drag it to the new folder, and then tap . Tap **Copy** to copy or **Move** to move.



## Paper Artist

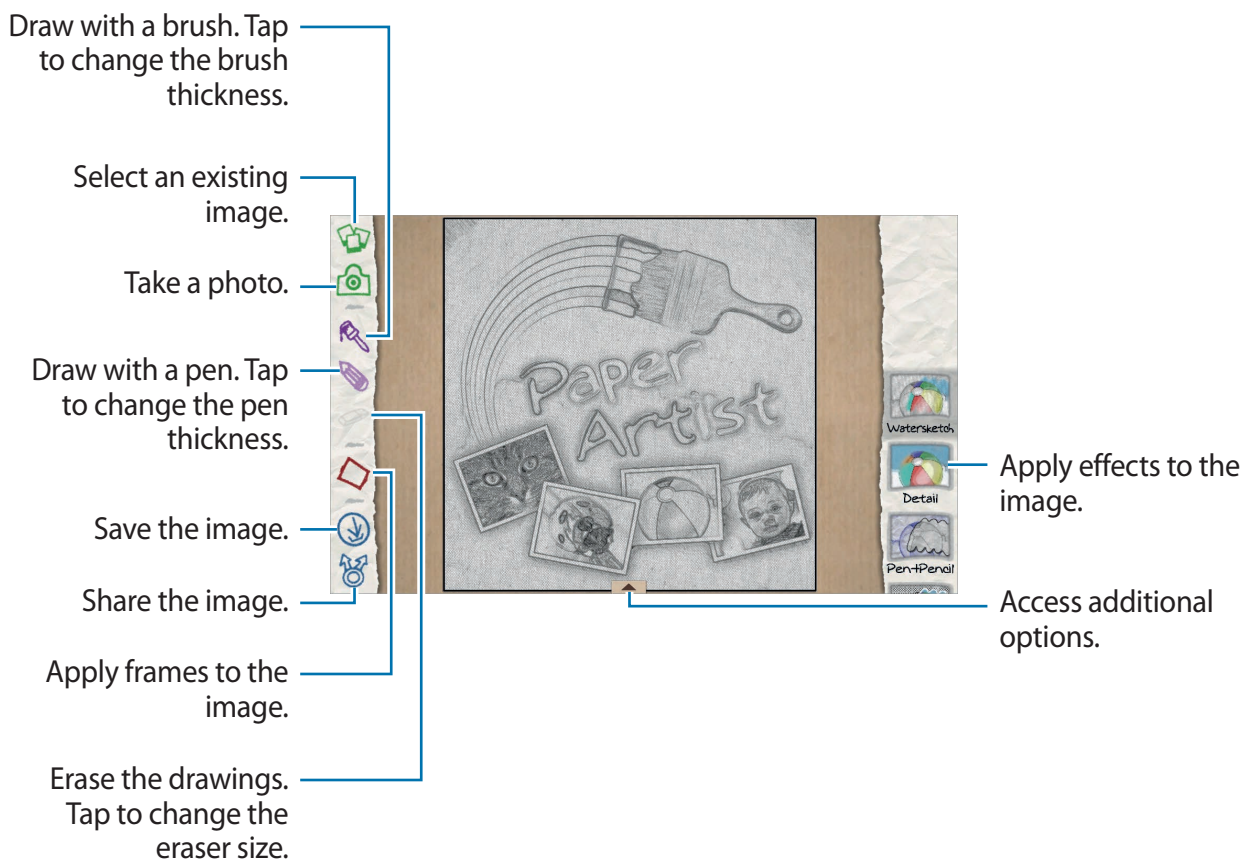
Use this application to make images look like illustrations with fun effects or frames.

Tap **Paper Artist** on the Applications screen.



This application may not be available depending on the region.

Use artistic tools to edit an image. The edited image is saved in the **Gallery** → **Paper Pictures** folder.



## Video

Use this application to play video files.

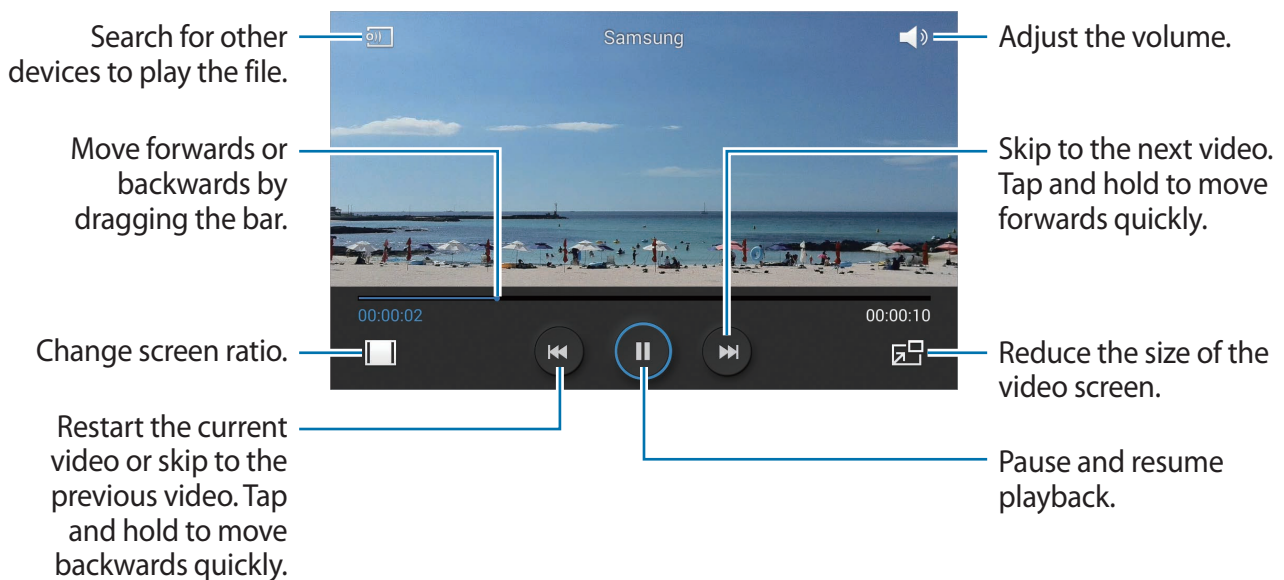
Tap **Video** on the Applications screen.



- Some file formats are not supported depending on the device's software.
- Some files may not play properly depending on the encoding method used.
- This application may not be available depending on the region.

## Playing videos

Select a video to play.




## Deleting videos

Tap → **Delete**, select videos by ticking, and then tap **Delete**.

## Sharing videos

Tap → **Share via**, select videos by ticking, tap **Done**, and then select a sharing method.

## Using Popup Video player

Use this feature to use other applications without closing the video player. While watching videos, tap  to use the pop-up player.

Spread two fingers apart on the screen to enlarge the player or pinch to reduce it. To move the player, drag the player to another location.

## Video Editor

Use this application to edit videos and apply various effects.

Tap **Video Editor** on the Applications screen.



- Some file formats are not supported depending on the device's software.
- Some files may not play properly depending on the encoding method used.
- Some features are not supported depending on the selected theme.
- This application may not be available depending on the region.

## Creating videos

Set a frame theme. To add media files, tap the icon corresponding to the desired media type at the bottom left pane of the screen, and then tap a file. Repeat file insertion as needed, and then tap **Done** to finish.

To delete a frame, tap and hold the frame, and then drag it to the rubbish bin.

To rearrange frames, tap and hold a frame, and then drag it to a new location.

Tap  and add a transition effect between frames.

To save, tap  → **Save**.

To export the video as a file, tap **Export**.

## Inserting text in a video

Select a frame to edit, enter text by using text insertion options at the right pane, tap **Done**, and then save the video.

## Trimming segments of a video

Select a frame to split, move the start bracket to the desired starting point, move the end bracket to the desired ending point, tap **Done**, and then save the video.

## Splitting videos

Select a frame to split, drag it to the split point, tap **Split** → **Done** and then save the video.

## Applying effects to a video

Select a frame to edit, select an effect option at the left pane, tap **Done**, and then save the video.

## Story Album

Use this application to create your own digital album to keep your stories by organising the images neatly and automatically.

Tap **Story Album** on the Applications screen.

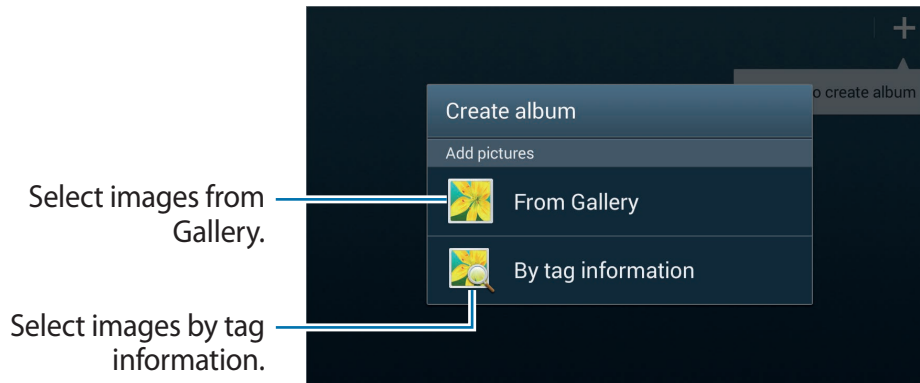
To start **Story Album**, you need to download and install the application. Tap **OK**, and then follow the on-screen instruction.



This application may not be available depending on the region.

## Creating story albums

Create story albums by selecting images from Gallery or images sorted by tag information. Tap **+**, and then select an option.



### Creating albums from Gallery

Tap **From Gallery**, select a folder, select images, and then tap **✓**. Enter a title for the album, select a theme and a cover image, and then tap **Create album**.

### Creating albums by tag information

Create albums by sorting photos by tag information, such as the location where an image was taken, subjects, or time.


Tap **By tag information**, and then set the following tag options:

- **Location:** Specify a location. The device sorts images from the location. To use location tags, activate the GPS tag setting in Camera before taking photos. (p. 87)
- **People:** Select people from tagged images. The device sorts images taken with the people. To use people tags, add tags to images in Gallery. (p. 92)
- **Time:** Specify a period of time. The device sorts images taken during the period you set.

After the setting is finished, tap **Find pictures**. Enter a title for the album, select a theme and a cover image, and then tap **Create album**.

## Viewing story albums

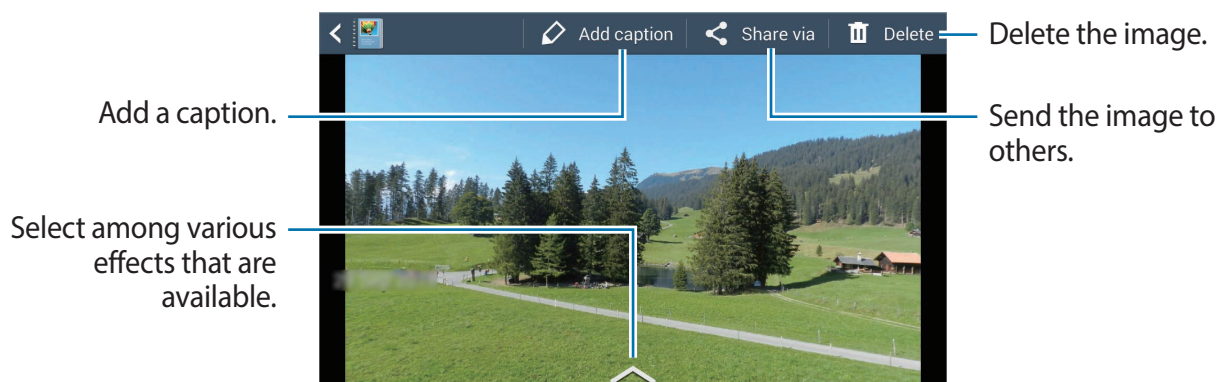
Select a story album. The cover image appears on the first page. Scroll left or right to view images in the story album.

On a page of the album, tap  and use the following functions. The available options vary depending on the page.

- **Edit title:** Rename the album.
- **Add content:** Add more content to the album.
- **Remove content:** Delete content in the album.
- **Edit:** Change the page layout or edit the images on the current page.
- **Change theme:** Change the theme for the page layout.
- **Change cover image:** Change the cover image of the album.
- **Slideshow:** Start a slideshow with the images in the current album.
- **Share via:** Send the album to others.
- **Export:** Export the album to other storage locations.
- **Print:** Print the album via a USB or Wi-Fi connection. Some printers may not be compatible with the device.
- **Order photo book:** Place an order for a printed album.
- **Delete page:** Delete the page.

## Editing images

Tap the image of the page in an album.



Tap , and then use the following functions:


- **Slideshow:** Start a slideshow or change the slideshow settings.
- **Set as cover:** Set the image as an album cover image.
- **Rotate left:** Rotate the image anticlockwise.
- **Rotate right:** Rotate the image clockwise.

## Creating albums with recommended photos


When you take multiple photos in a location, the device suggests creating a new album based on the location. This feature helps you create photo albums conveniently when you have daily events or travel.

### Setting your home city

Set your home city to let the device recognise whether you are at home or travelling. The device suggests creating event or travel albums based on your location. For example, when taking photos outside of the home city, the device suggests creating a travel album.

Tap  → **Settings** → **Home city**, and then select a setting method.

### Setting a minimum number of photos


Tap  → **Settings**, and then drag the switch next to an album type under **Suggestions** to the right. Select the album type, and then set the minimum number of photos.

When you take photos that meet the criteria you set, the device will suggest creating an album.



The device will recommend creating story albums when you surpass the preset specified number of photos in a single day.

### Creating an event or travel album

Tap  → **From suggestions**. Select an album, enter a title for the album, and then tap **Create album**.

## Xtremera







Use this application to capture star trails or moving lights.

Tap **Xtremera** on the Application screen.




This application may not be available depending on the region.

In Shooting mode, use the following functions:

- : Access the Home screen.
- : Move back.
- : Change camera options.
- : Take a photo.
- : View photos.
- : Change shooting options.

## Capturing star trails

Create images of star trails by taking photos continuously and merging them together.

Tap **Star Trail** → **Shoot**, set the shoot duration, and then tap . Mount the camera on a tripod. Move the camera in the direction of the arrow to locate the North Star, and then press the Shutter button to start taking photos.



You can activate or deactivate the North Star location feature by tapping the **Find Polaris**, **ON** or **OFF** buttons.



## Highlighting subjects or capturing moving lights

Highlight subjects or capture moving lights by setting a long exposure.

### Highlighting subjects

Tap **Light Art** → **Highlighting** → **Shoot**. Mount your camera on a tripod and press the Shutter button to start taking a photo. Illuminate the subject that you want to highlight with a light source, such as a flashlight. The longer the light source is illuminated, the brighter the highlighted area will be.

### Capturing light trails

Tap **Light Art** → **Light Painting** → **Shoot**. Mount your camera on a tripod and press the Shutter button to start taking a photo. Move a light source, such as a flashlight, to draw a light trail.

### Capturing lights in pendulum motion

Tap **Light Art** → **Pendulum** → **Shoot**. Tie a light source, such as a flashlight, to a fixed point and let it swing above the ground. Place your camera on a level surface with the lens facing towards the swinging subject. Press the Shutter button to start taking a photo.

## Music

Use this application to listen to music.

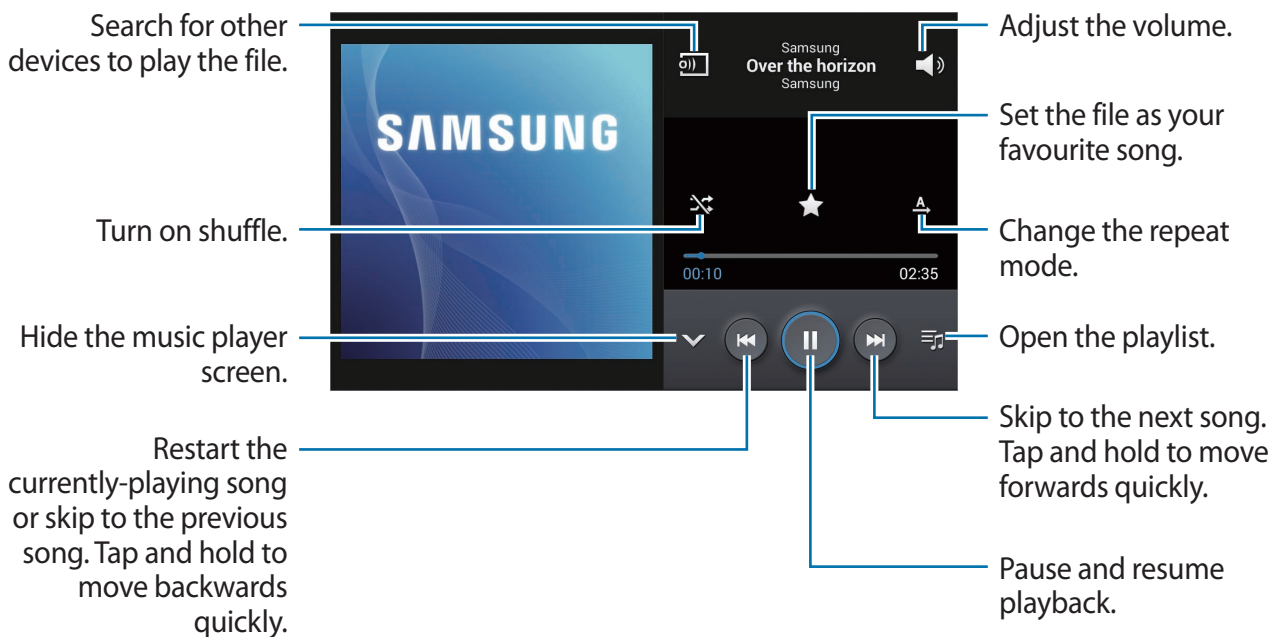
Tap **Music** on the Applications screen.



- Some file formats are not supported depending on the device's software version.
- Some files may not play properly depending on the encoding method used.
- This application may not be available depending on the region.

## Playing music

Select a music category, and then select a song to play.



To listen to songs at equal volume levels, tap → **Settings** → **Smart volume**.



When **Smart volume** is activated, the volume may end up louder than the device volume level. Use caution to avoid long-term exposure to loud sounds to prevent damage to your hearing.

## Creating playlists

Make an own selection of songs.

Tap **Playlists**, and then tap → **Create playlist**. Enter a title and tap **OK**. Tap **Add music**, select songs to include, and then tap **Done**.

To add the currently-playing song to a playlist, tap → **Add to playlist**.

## YouTube

Use this application to watch videos from the YouTube website.

Tap **YouTube** on the Applications screen.




This application may not be available depending on the region.

## Watching videos

Tap , and then enter a keyword. Select one of the returned search results to watch a video.



## Sharing videos

Select the video to view, tap , and then select a sharing method.

## Uploading videos

Tap  → **Uploads** → , select a video, enter information for the video, and then tap .

# Communication

## Contacts

Use this application to manage contacts, including phone numbers, email addresses, and others.

Tap **Contacts** on the Applications screen.






This application may not be available depending on the region.

## Managing contacts

Tap **Contacts**.

### Creating a contact

Tap  and enter contact information.

-  : Add an image.
-  /  : Add or delete a contact field.

### Editing a contact

Select a contact to edit, and then tap .

### Deleting a contact

Select a contact to delete, and then tap  → **Delete**.



## Searching for contacts

Tap **Contacts**.

Use one of the following search methods:


- Scroll up or down the contacts list.
- Use the index at the right side of the contacts list for quick scrolling, by dragging a finger along it.
- Tap the search field at the top of the contacts list and enter search criteria.

Once a contact is selected, take one of the following actions:

-  : Add to favourite contacts.
-  : Compose an email.

## Displaying contacts

Tap **Contacts**.

By default, the device shows all saved contacts on the device or another account. Tap  → **Contacts to display**, and then select a location where contacts are saved.

## Moving contacts

Tap **Contacts**.

### Moving contacts to Google

Tap  → **Merge accounts** → **Merge with Google**. Contacts moved to Google Contacts appear with  in the contacts list.

### Moving contacts to Samsung

Tap  → **Merge accounts** → **Merge with Samsung**. Contacts moved to Samsung Contacts appear with  in the contacts list.

## Importing and exporting contacts

Tap **Contacts**.


### Importing contacts

Tap  → **Import/Export**, and then select an import option.

### Exporting contacts

Tap  → **Import/Export**, and then select an export option.

### Sharing contacts

Tap  → **Share namecard via**, select contacts, tap **Done**, and then select a sharing method.

## Favourite contacts

Tap **Favourites**.

Tap , and then take one of the following actions:

- **Search:** Search for contacts.
- **Add to favourites:** Add contacts to favourites.
- **Remove from favourites:** Remove contacts from favourites.
- **Grid view / List view:** View contacts in grid or list form.

## Contact groups


Tap **Groups**.

### Adding contacts to a group

Select a group, and then tap . Select contacts to add, and then tap **Done**.

### Managing groups

Tap , and then take one of the following actions:

- **Create:** Make a new group.
- **Search:** Search for contacts.
- **Change order:** Tap and hold  next to the group name, drag it up or down to another position, and then tap **Done**.
- **Delete groups:** Select user-added groups, and then tap **Delete**. Default groups cannot be deleted.


### Sending an email to a group's members

Select a group, tap  → **Send email**, select members, and then tap **Done**.

## Business card

Tap **Contacts**.

Create a business card and send it to others.

Tap **Set up my profile**, enter details, such as phone number, email address, and postal address, and then tap **Save**. If user information has been saved when you set up the device, select the business card, and then tap  to edit.

To share the business card with others, tap  → **Share namecard via**, and then select a sharing method.

## Email

Use this application to send or view email messages.

Tap **Email** on the Applications screen.



This application may not be available depending on the region.



## Setting up email accounts

Set up an email account when opening **Email** for the first time.

Enter the email address and password. Tap **Next** for a private email account, such as Google Mail, or tap **Manual setup** for a company email account. After that, follow the on-screen instructions to complete the setup.

To set up another email account, tap  → **Settings** → **Add account**.

## Sending messages


Tap the email account to use, and then tap  at the top of the screen. Enter recipients, subject, and message, and then tap .

Tap  to add a recipient from the contacts list.

Tap  to attach images, videos, contacts, and others.

Tap  to insert images, contacts, location information, and others into the message.

## Sending scheduled messages


While composing a message, tap  → **Schedule sending**. Tick **Schedule sending**, set a time and date, and then tap **Done**.



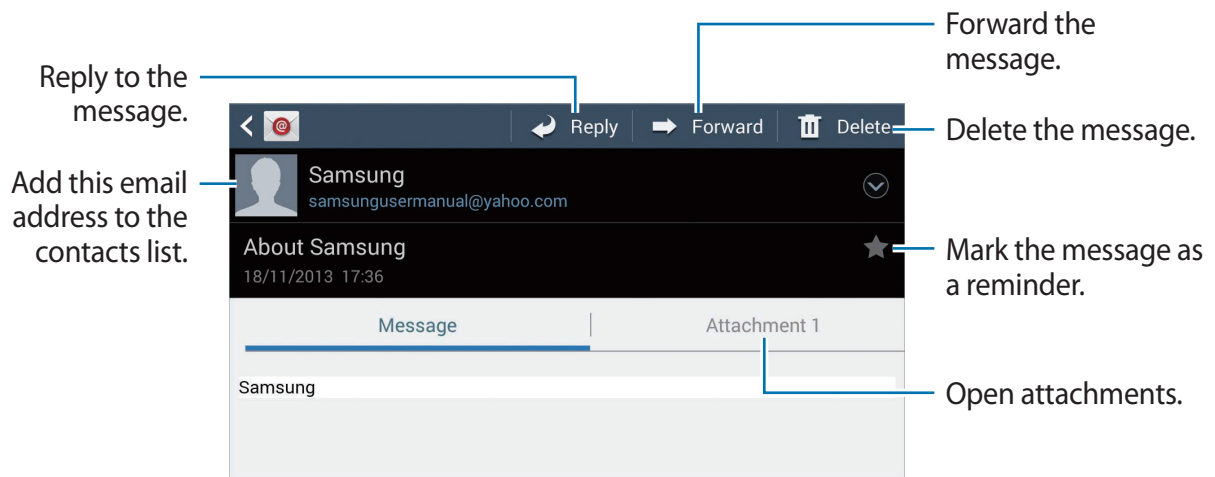
- If the device is turned off at the scheduled time, is not connected to the network, or the network is unstable, the message will not be sent.
- This feature is based on the time and date set on the device. The time and date may be incorrect if you move across time zones and the network does not update the information.



## Reading messages

Select an email account to use, and new messages are retrieved. To manually retrieve new messages, tap .

Tap a message to read.



Tap the attachment tab to open attachments, and then tap  to save it.

## Google Mail



Use this application to quickly and directly access the Google Mail service.

Tap **Google Mail** on the Applications screen.



- This application may not be available depending on the region.
- This application may be labelled differently depending on the region.


## Sending messages

In any mailbox, tap , enter recipients, a subject, and a message, and then tap .

Tap  → **Attach picture** to attach images.


Tap  → **Attach video** to attach videos.


Tap  → **Add Cc/Bcc** to add more recipients.

Tap  → **Save draft** to save the message for later delivery.

Tap  → **Discard** to start over.

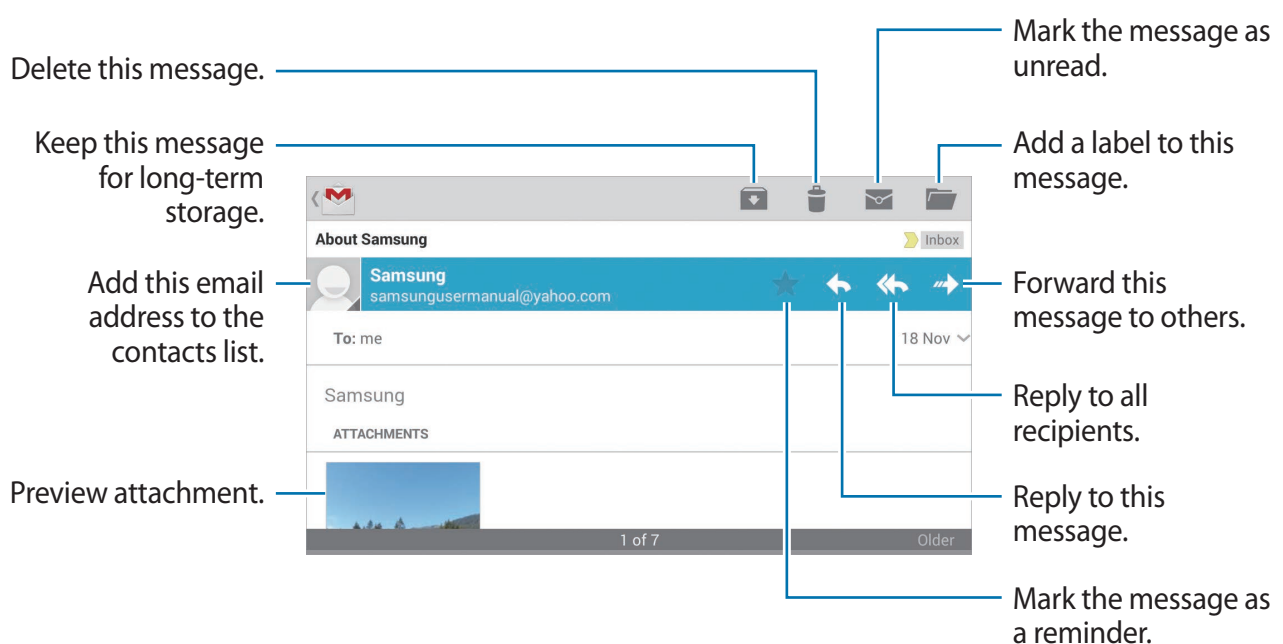
Tap  → **Settings** to change the Google Mail settings.

Tap  → **Send feedback** to report your opinions for application development.

Tap  → **Help** to access help information for the Google Mail.

## Reading messages

Tap a message to read.




The screen may differ depending on the selected account.

## Labels

Google Mail does not use actual folders, but uses labels instead. When Google Mail is launched, it displays messages labelled Inbox.

Tap  to view messages in other labels.

To add a label to a message, tap and hold a message, tap  → **Change labels**, and then select the label to assign.

## Hangouts

Use this application to chat with others.

Tap **Hangouts** on the Applications screen.



This application may not be available depending on the region.

Select a friend from the friends list or enter data to search and select a friend from the results to start chatting.

## Google+

Use this application to stay connected with people via Google's social network service.

Tap **Google+** on the Applications screen.



This application may not be available depending on the region.

Tap **All** to change the category, and then scroll up or down to view posts from your circles.

Tap  to use other social network features.

## G+ Photos




Use this application to share images or videos via Google's social network service.

Tap **G+ Photos** on the Applications screen.



This application may not be available depending on the region.

Tap  →  to select images or videos, and then use one of the following:

- **Share:** Share the images or videos.
-  : Share the image via Hangouts.
-  : Delete the images or videos.
-  : Create a new album and copy the images or videos.

## ChatON

Use this application to chat with any device.

Tap **ChatON** on the Applications screen.



This application may not be available depending on the region.

Create a buddies list by entering phone numbers or Samsung account email addresses, or by selecting buddies from the list of suggestions.

Tap  → **Start chat** and select a buddy to start chatting.

# Web & network

## Internet

Use this application to browse the Internet.

Tap **Internet** on the Applications screen.



This application may not be available depending on the region.

## Viewing webpages

Tap the address field, enter the web address, and then tap **Go**.


Tap  to share, save, or print the current webpage while viewing a webpage.

## Opening a new page

Tap  → **New window**.

To go to another webpage, tap , and tap the page to select it.

## Searching the web by voice

Tap the address field, tap , speak a keyword, and then select one of the suggested keywords that appear.





This feature may not be available depending on the region.

## Bookmarks

To bookmark the current webpage, tap  → **Bookmark this page**.

To open a bookmarked webpage, tap , and then select one.

## History

Tap  → **History** to open a webpage from the list of recently-visited webpages. To clear the history, tap  → **Clear history**.

## Links

Tap and hold a link on the webpage to open it in a new page, save, or copy.

To view saved links, use **Downloads**. (p. 135)

## Sharing webpages

To share a webpage address with others, tap  → **Share page**.

To share a part of a webpage, tap and hold the desired text, and then tap **Share via**.

## Chrome

Use this application to search for information and browse webpages.

Tap **Chrome** on the Applications screen.




This application may not be available depending on the region.

## Viewing webpages


Tap the address field, and then enter a web address or search criteria.

## Opening a new page

Tap  → **New tab**.


To go to another webpage, tap  → a webpage.

## Searching the web by voice

Tap the address field, tap , speak a keyword, and then select one of the suggested keywords that appear.

## Syncing with other devices

Sync open tabs and bookmarks to use with Chrome on another device, when you are logged in with the same Google account.

To view open tabs on other devices, tap  → **Other devices**. Select a webpage to open.

To view bookmarks, tap .

## Bluetooth

Bluetooth creates a direct wireless connection between two devices over short distances. Use Bluetooth to exchange data or media files with other devices.




- Samsung is not responsible for the loss, interception, or misuse of data sent or received via the Bluetooth feature.
- Always ensure that you share and receive data with devices that are trusted and properly secured. If there are obstacles between the devices, the operating distance may be reduced.
- Some devices, especially those that are not tested or approved by the Bluetooth SIG, may be incompatible with your device.
- Do not use the Bluetooth feature for illegal purposes (for example, pirating copies of files or illegally tapping communications for commercial purposes). Samsung is not responsible for the repercussion of illegal use of the Bluetooth feature.
- This feature may not be available depending on the region.

To activate Bluetooth, on the Applications screen, tap **Settings** → **Connections** → **Bluetooth**, and then drag the **Bluetooth** switch to the right.

## Pairing with other Bluetooth devices

On the Applications screen, tap **Settings** → **Connections** → **Bluetooth** → **Scan**, and detected devices are listed. Select the device you want to pair with, and then accept the auto-generated passkey on both devices to confirm.

## Sending and receiving data

Many applications support data transfer via Bluetooth. An example is **Gallery**. Open **Gallery**, select an image, tap  → **Bluetooth**, and then select one of the Bluetooth devices. After that, accept the Bluetooth authorisation request on the other device to receive the image. The transferred file is saved in the **Bluetooth** folder. If a contact is received, it is added to the contacts list automatically.

## Samsung Link

Use this application to play contents saved on remotely-located devices or web storage services over the Internet. You can play and send multimedia files on your device to another device or web storage service.

To use this application, you must sign in to your Samsung account and register two or more devices. The registration methods may vary depending on the device type.

Tap **Samsung Link** on the Applications screen.



This application may not be available depending on the region.

When opening this application, all the content from your registered devices and storage services will appear. You can browse and play them.



## Sending files



Send files to other devices or upload them to web storage services.

Tap  to select a device or web storage and scroll left or right to select a media category.

Then, tap , select files, and then tap .

## Sharing files

Tap  to select a device or web storage and scroll left or right to select a media category.

Then, tap , select files, tap , and then select a sharing method.

## Playing files on a remote device

Tap  to select a device or web storage and scroll left or right to select a media category.

Then, tap , select files, tap , and then select a device.




- Supported file formats may differ depending on connected devices as a media player.
- Some files may be buffered while playing depending on the network connection.

## Managing contents on a web storage service

Select a web storage service, and then view and manage your files.

To transfer files between your device and a web storage service, tap , select files, and then tap .

To register web storage services to the device, tap  → **Add storage**, and then select a web storage service.

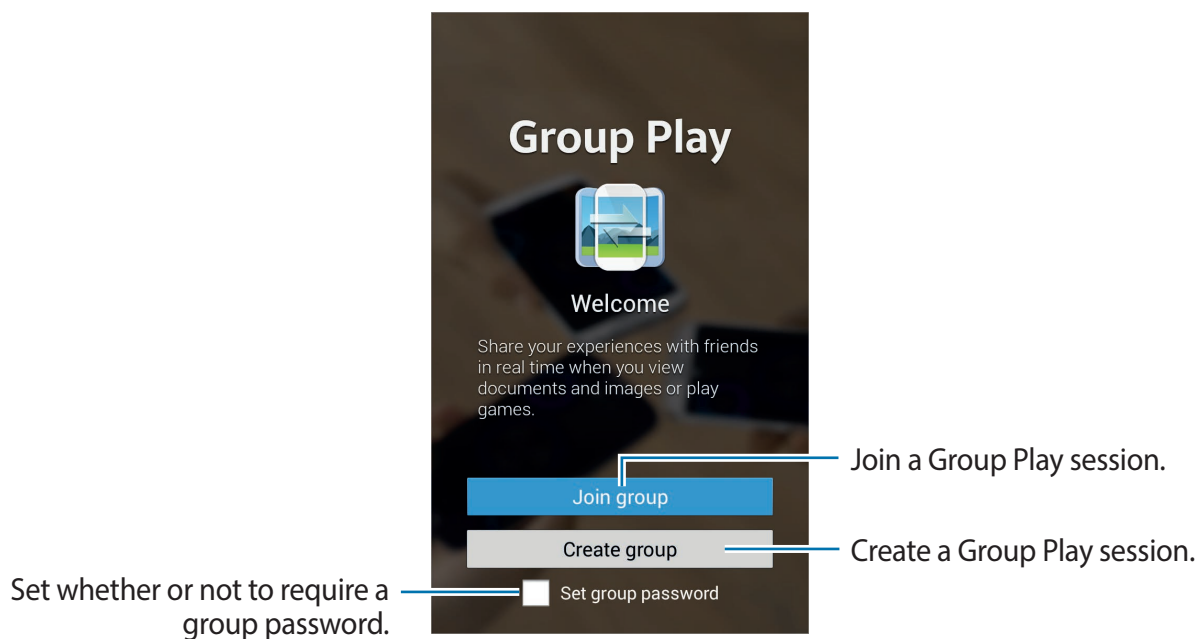
## Group Play

Use this application to enjoy moments with your friends by sharing and playing content. Create or join a Group Play session, and then share content, such as images or documents.

Tap **Group Play** on the Applications screen.



- This application may not be available depending on the region.
- While using this application, you cannot access the Internet through the Wi-Fi network.



## Creating a group for Group Play

When you create a Group Play session, other devices can join the session and share the content.

When you use a password for a Group Play session, other devices must enter the password to join the session. To use a password, tick **Set group password**.

Tap **Create group**, set a password, and then use the following features:

- **Share images:** Select images to share.
- **Share documents:** Select documents to share.
- **Play games and more:** Play online games with friends.

## Joining Group Play

Join a Group Play session created by another device.


Tap **Join group**, select a Group Play session to join, and then enter the password for the group if necessary.

## Using additional features in a Group Play session

While sharing content with other devices, use the following features:

Tap  and write a note or draw on the screen. All participants can see what you create.

Tap  to view all shared images in mosaic layout.

Tap  or  to select more images or documents.

Tap  to view the group participants.

# Application & media stores

## Play Store


Use this application to purchase and download applications and games that are able to run on the device.

Tap **Play Store** on the Applications screen.



This application may not be available depending on the region.

## Installing applications

Browse applications by category, or tap  to search with a keyword.


Select an application to view information. To download it, tap **INSTALL**. If there is a charge for the application, tap the price, and follow the on-screen instructions to complete the purchase process.



- When a new version is available for any installed application, an update icon appears at the top of the screen to alert you to the update. Open the notifications panel and tap the icon to update the application.
- To install applications that you downloaded from other sources, on the Applications screen, tap **Settings** → **More** → **Security** → **Unknown sources**.

## Uninstalling applications

Uninstall the applications purchased from **Play Store**.

Tap  → **My apps**, select an application to delete in the list of installed applications, and then tap **UNINSTALL**.

## Samsung Apps

Use this application to purchase and download dedicated Samsung applications. For more information, visit [apps.samsung.com](https://apps.samsung.com).


Tap **Samsung Apps** on the Applications screen.



This application may not be available depending on the region.

## Installing applications

Browse applications by category.

To search for an application, tap  at the top of the screen, and then enter a keyword in the search field.

Select an application to view information. To download it, tap **Free**. If there is a charge for the application, tap the price, and follow the on-screen instructions to complete the purchase process.



When a new version is available for any installed application, an update icon appears at the top of the screen to alert you to the update. Open the notifications panel and tap the icon to update the application.

## Play Books

Use this application to read and download book files.

Tap **Play Books** on the Applications screen.



This application may not be available depending on the region.

## Play Movies

Use this application to watch, download, and rent movies or TV shows.

Tap **Play Movies** on the Applications screen.



This application may not be available depending on the region.

## Play Music

Use this application to listen to music from the device or stream music from the Google cloud service.

Tap **Play Music** on the Applications screen.



This application may not be available depending on the region.

## Play Newsstand

Use this application to purchase or subscribe to newspapers or magazines.

Tap **Play Newsstand** on the Applications screen.



This application may not be available depending on the region.

## Play Games

Use this application to download and play games.

Tap **Play Games** on the Applications screen.



This application may not be available depending on the region.

# Utilities

## S Memo

Use this application to create a memo using images and voice recordings.

Tap **S Memo** on the Applications screen.

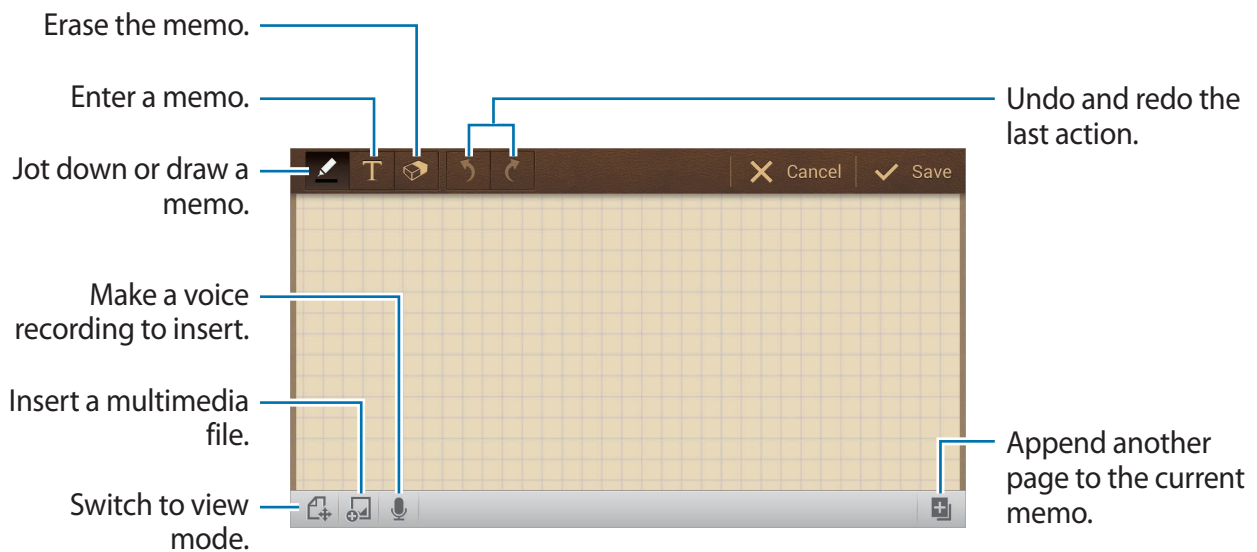



This application may not be available depending on the region.

## Composing memos

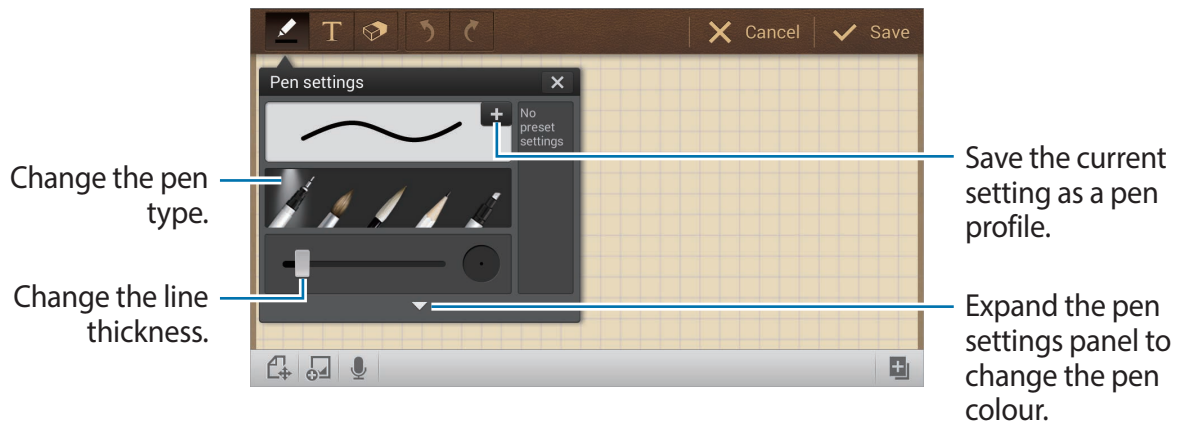
Create memos with enriched content by drawing sketches with your finger or adding images or voice memos.

Tap **+📐** to write or draw on the screen, or tap **+T** to enter text with the keyboard.



When jotting down a memo, tap  once more to change the pen type, line thickness, or pen colour.

When erasing the handwritten memo, tap  once more to change the eraser size or tap **Clear all** to clear the memo.



To change the sheet background, tap  → **Change background**.

To add tags, tap  → **Add tag**.


## Inserting multimedia files or a voice recording

Tap to  insert multimedia files. Tap  to insert a voice recording.

## Browsing memos

Browse memo thumbnails by scrolling up or down.

To search for a memo, tap  → **Search**.

To delete memos, tap  → **Delete**.

To sort memos by date, title, tag, or others, tap  → **Sort by**.


To change the view mode, tap  → **List view**.

To create a memo by importing a file, tap  → **Import**.


To export memos as another file format, tap  → **Export**.



To create a folder, tap  → **Create folder**.

To change the order of memos, tap  → **Change order**.

To move memos to another folder, tap  → **Move**.


To copy memos, tap  → **Copy**.

To change the S Memo settings, tap  → **Settings**.

To back up or restore memos to or from a storage location, tap  → **Backup and restore**.

## Viewing a memo

Tap the memo thumbnail to open it.


To delete the memo, tap  → **Delete**.


To send the memo to others, tap  → **Share via**.

To export the memo as another file format, tap  → **Export**.


To add the memo as your favourites list, tap  → **Add to Favourites**.

To save the memo as an event, tap  → **Create event**.

To set the memo as wallpaper or to assign it to a contact, tap  → **Set as**.

To print the memo via a USB or Wi-Fi connection, tap  → **Print**. Some printers may not be compatible with the device.

To edit the memo, tap .

To play the voice recording, tap .

## S Planner

Use this application to manage events and tasks.

Tap **S Planner** on the Applications screen.



This application may not be available depending on the region.

### Creating events or tasks


Tap **New**, and then use one of the following methods:

- **Add event:** Enter an event with an optional repeat setting.
- **Add task:** Enter a task with an optional priority setting.

To add an event or task more briefly, tap a date to select it and tap it again.




Enter a title and specify which calendar to use or sync with. Then tap **Edit event details** or **Edit task details** to add more details, such as how often the event repeats, when it has an advance alert, or where it takes place.

To add a location to the event, enter the location in the **Location** field, tap  next to the field, and then pinpoint the precise location by tapping and holding on the map that appears.

To attach an image, tap **Images**, and then take a photo or select one of the existing images.

## Syncing with Google Calendar

On the Applications screen, tap **Settings** → **Accounts** → **Google** under **My accounts** → a Google account → **Sync Calendar**. To manually sync for updating, on the Applications screen, tap **S Planner** →  → **Sync**.

To display synced event or tasks, tap  → **Calendars** → **Display**, tick the Google account, and then tap **Done**.

## Changing calendar type

Select one from among different types of calendars including year, month, week, and others at the right side of the screen. A pinch gesture can be used to change calendar type. For example, pinch to change from the monthly calendar to the yearly calendar, or spread apart to change the monthly calendar to the weekly calendar.

## Searching for events

Tap  → **Search**, and then enter a keyword to search for.

To view today's events, tap **Today** at the top of the screen.

## Deleting events

Tap  → **Delete**, select events, and then tap **Delete**.

## Sharing events

Select an event, tap  → **Share via**, and then select a sharing method.

## Dropbox



Use this application to save and share files with others via the Dropbox cloud storage. When you save files to Dropbox, your device automatically syncs with the web server and any other computers that have Dropbox installed.





Tap **Dropbox** on the Applications screen.



This application may not be available depending on the region.

When running Dropbox for the first time, tap **Start** to activate it. Follow the on-screen instructions to complete the setup.

Once Dropbox is activated, photos and videos taken with the device's camera are uploaded to Dropbox automatically. To view the uploaded photos or videos, tap . To share or delete files or create albums, tap , and then select files.

To upload files to Dropbox, tap  →  → **Upload here** → **Photos or videos** or **Other files**. While viewing images or videos, tap  to add it to the favourites list. To open files in the favourites list, tap .

## Cloud

Use this feature to sync files or back up settings and application data with your Samsung account or Dropbox.

On the Applications screen, tap **Settings** → **Accounts** → **Cloud**.



This feature may not be available depending on the region.

## Syncing with the Samsung account

Tap your Samsung account or **Sync settings** to sync files.

## Backing up or restoring data

Tap **Backup** or **Restore** to back up or restore data with your Samsung account.

## Syncing with Dropbox

Tap **Link Dropbox account**, and then enter the Dropbox account. Follow the on-screen instructions to complete the setup.

Once you sign in, tap **Allow** and the device automatically syncs files with Dropbox whenever you make some changes.

## Drive

Use this application to save and share files with others via the Google Drive service by selecting files from the device, or creating or scanning documents. When you save files to Google Drive, your device automatically syncs with the web server and any other computers that have Google Drive installed.

Tap **Drive** on the Applications screen.



This application may not be available depending on the region.

## Uploading files

Tap **Upload**, select one of the files saved on the device, and then upload it to Google Drive. To create a new document, or scan an image or document and upload it, tap **Create** or **Scan**.

## Viewing files

Select a file to open it.

While viewing a file, tap ⓘ and use one of the following icons:

- 👤 : Share the file with others.
- 📁 : Move the file to another folder.
- 📶 : Make the file available offline.
- ⋮ : Access additional options.
- ★ : Mark the file as important.

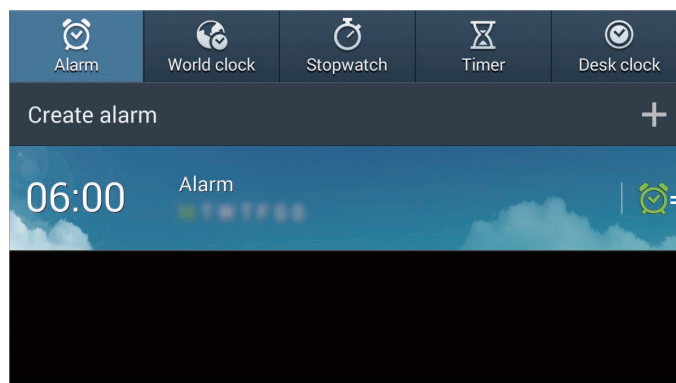
## Clock

Use this application to set alarms, check the time of many major cities in the world, measure the duration of an event, set a timer, or use as the desk clock.

Tap **Clock** on the Applications screen.



This application may not be available depending on the region.



Turn this alarm on or off.



## Alarm

### Setting alarms

Tap **Create alarm**, set a time for the alarm to go off, select days for the alarm to repeat, and then tap **Save**.

- **More** → **Location alarm**: Set a location. The alarm goes off only when you are in the location.
- **More** → **Snooze**: Set an interval and the number of times for the alarm to repeat after the preset time.
- **More** → **Smart alarm**: Set a time for the alarm to go off before the preset time.

## Stopping alarms

Drag  outside the large circle to stop an alarm. Drag  outside the large circle to repeat the alarm after a specified length of time.

## Deleting alarms

Tap and hold the alarm, and then tap **Delete**.

## World clock

### Creating clocks

Tap **Add city**, and then enter a city name or select a city from the cities list.

To apply summer time, tap and hold a clock, and then tap **DST settings**.

### Deleting clocks

Tap and hold the clock, and then tap **Delete**.

## Stopwatch

Tap **Start** to time an event. Tap **Lap** to record lap times.

Tap **Reset** to clear lap time records.

## Timer

Set the duration, and then tap **Start**.

Drag  outside the large circle when the timer goes off.

## Desk clock

Tap  to view in full screen.

## Calculator

Use this application for simple or complex calculations.

Tap **Calculator** on the Applications screen.



This application may not be available depending on the region.

To see the calculation history, tap  to hide the keypad.

To clear the history, tap  → **Clear history**.

## S Voice

Use this application to command the device by voice to perform various features.

Tap **S Voice** on the Applications screen. Alternatively, tap  twice.



This application may not be available depending on the region.

Here are several examples of spoken commands:

- Open music
- Launch calculator
- Check schedule

Tips for better voice recognition

- Speak clearly.
- Speak in quiet places.
- Do not use offensive or slang words.
- Avoid speaking in dialectal accents.

The device may not recognise your commands or may perform unwanted commands depending on your surroundings or how you speak.



## Google


Use this application to search not only the Internet, but also applications and their contents on the device as well.

Tap **Google** on the Applications screen.



This application may not be available depending on the region.

## Searching the device


Tap the search field, and then enter a keyword. Alternatively, tap , and then speak a keyword.

## Search scope

To select what applications to search, tap  → **Settings** → **Phone search**, and then tick the items to search for.

## Google Now

Launch Google search to view Google Now cards that show the current weather, public transit info, your next appointment, and more when you are most likely to need it.

Join Google Now when opening Google search for the first time. To change Google Now settings, tap  → **Settings** → **Google Now**.

## Voice Search

Use this application to search webpages by speaking.

Tap **Voice Search** on the Applications screen.



This application may not be available depending on the region.

Speak a keyword or phrase when **Speak now** appears on the screen.

## My Files



Use this application to access all kinds of files stored in the device, including images, videos, songs, and sound clips.

Tap **My Files** on the Applications screen.



This application may not be available depending on the region.


## Managing files

Select a folder to open it. To go back to the parent folder, tap . To return to the root directory, tap .

In a folder, tap , and then use one of the following options:

- **Select all:** Select all files or folders to apply the same option to them at once.
- **Create folder:** Create a folder.
- **Search:** Search for files or folders.
- **View by:** Change the view mode.
- **Sort by:** Sort files or folders.
- **Settings:** Change the file manager settings.

## Adding shortcuts to folders

Add a shortcut of frequently-used folders to the root directory. Tap  → **Add shortcut**, enter a shortcut name, select a folder, and then tap **Set here**.

## Downloads

Use this application to see what files are downloaded through the applications.

Tap **Downloads** on the Applications screen.



This application may not be available depending on the region.

Select a file to open it with an appropriate application.

To sort the files by size, tap **Sort by size**.

To sort the files by date, tap **Sort by date**.

# Travel & local

## Maps

Use this application to pinpoint the location of the device, search for places, or get directions. Tap **Maps** on the Applications screen.




This application may not be available depending on the region.

## Searching for locations

Search for locations by entering an address or a keyword. Once the location is found, select a location to view the detailed information. Refer to the help for more information.

## Getting directions for a destination

Tap  to set starting and ending locations, and then select a travel method. The device shows the routes to get to the destination.

# Settings

## About Settings

Use this application to configure the device, set application options, and add accounts.  
Tap **Settings** on the Applications screen.



Some options may not be available depending on the region.

## Connections

### Wi-Fi

Activate the Wi-Fi feature to connect to a Wi-Fi network and access the Internet or other network devices.

To use options, tap .

- **Advanced:** Customise Wi-Fi settings.
- **WPS push button:** Connect to a secured Wi-Fi network with a WPS button.
- **WPS PIN entry:** Connect to a secured Wi-Fi network with a WPS PIN.




If you use the camera in a country other than the one where it was purchased, the 5 GHz Wi-Fi feature may not function properly, due to differences in radio frequencies. Available radio frequencies may differ by country.

### Setting Wi-Fi sleep policy

On the Settings screen, tap **Connections** → **Wi-Fi** → → **Advanced** → **Keep Wi-Fi on during sleep**.

## Setting Network notification

The device can detect open Wi-Fi networks and display an icon on the status bar to notify when available.

On the Settings screen, tap **Connections** → **Wi-Fi** →  → **Advanced** and tick **Network notification** to activate this feature.

## Wi-Fi Direct

Wi-Fi Direct connects two devices directly via a Wi-Fi network without requiring an access point.

On the Settings screen, tap **Connections** → **Wi-Fi** → **Wi-Fi Direct**.

## Bluetooth

Activate the Bluetooth feature to exchange information over short distances.

To use more options, tap .

- **Visibility timeout:** Set duration that the device is visible.
- **Received files:** View received files via the Bluetooth feature.

## Data usage

Keep track of your data usage amount.

- **Data usage cycle:** Enter monthly reset date to monitor your data usage.

To use more options, tap .

- **Auto sync data:** Activate or deactivate auto-syncing of applications. You can select what information to sync for each account in **Settings** → **Accounts**.
- **Mobile hotspots:** Select Wi-Fi hotspots to prevent applications that are running in the background from using them.

## More networks

Customise settings to control networks.

### Flight mode

This disables all wireless functions on your device. You can use only non-network services.

### Smart network

This disables all data network functions on your device when the screen is turned off, and disconnects applications, such as SNS applications or Email. When the screen is turned on, all new notifications that were not received while the screen was off are retrieved.



You can save battery power by turning on this feature.

### VPN

Set up and connect to virtual private networks (VPNs).

## Nearby devices

- **Shared contents:** Set the device to share your content with other devices.
- **Allowed devices list:** View the list of devices that can access your device.
- **Not-allowed devices list:** View the list of devices that are blocked from accessing your device.
- **Download to:** Select a memory location for saving media files.
- **Upload from other devices:** Set the device to accept uploads from other devices.

## My device

### Lock screen

Change settings for the locked screen.

### Display

Change the settings for the display.

- **Wallpaper:**
  - **Home screen:** Select a background image for the Home screen.
  - **Lock screen:** Select a background image for the locked screen.
  - **Home and lock screens:** Select a background image for the Home screen and the locked screen.
- **Notification panel:** Customise the items that appear on the notifications panel.
- **Page buddy:** Set the device to open contextual pages based on your actions.
- **Screen mode:**
  - **Adapt display:** Use this mode for optimising the display according to the display settings.
  - **Dynamic:** Use this mode to make the display tone more vivid.
  - **Standard:** Use this mode for normal surroundings.
  - **Movie:** Use this mode for dim surroundings, such as in a dark room.
- **Brightness:** Set the brightness of the display.
- **Auto rotate screen:** Set the content to rotate automatically when the device is turned.
- **Screen timeout:** Set the length of time the device waits before turning off the display's backlight.
- **Daydream:** Set the device to launch a screensaver when your device is charging.
- **Font style:** Change the font type for display text.
- **Font size:** Change the font size.
- **Display battery percentage:** Set the device to display the remaining battery life.



## Sound

Change settings for various sounds on the device.

- **Volume:** Adjust the volume level for music and videos, system sounds, and notifications.
- **Default notification sound:** Select a ringtone for events, such as incoming emails.
- **Touch sounds:** Set the device to sound when selecting an application or option on the touch screen.
- **Screen lock sound:** Set the device to sound when locking or unlocking the touch screen.
- **Vibration feedback:** Set the device to vibrate when touching keys.
- **Key-tap sound:** Set the device to sound when a key is touched.
- **Audio output:** Select a sound output format to use when connecting your device to optional HDMI devices. Some devices may not support the surround sound setting.

## Blocking mode

Select which notifications will be blocked in blocking mode.

## Hands-free mode

Set the device to read contents aloud and specify applications to use in hands-free mode.


## Accessory

Change settings for accessories.

- **Dock sound:** Set the device to play a sound when your device is connected to or removed from an optional desktop dock.
- **Audio output mode:** Set the device to use the dock speaker when your device is connected to an optional desktop dock.
- **Desk home screen display:** Set the device to show the desk clock when your device is connected to an optional desktop dock.
- **Audio output:** Select a sound output format to use when connecting your device to optional HDMI devices. Some devices may not support the surround sound setting.

## Accessibility

Accessibility services are special features for those with certain physical disabilities. Access and alert the following settings to improve accessibility to the device.

- **Auto rotate screen:** Set the interface to rotate automatically when you rotate the device.
- **Screen timeout:** Set the length of time the device waits before turning off the display's backlight.
- **Speak passwords:** Set the device to read aloud passwords you enter with TalkBack.
- **Show shortcut:** Add a shortcut to Accessibility on the quick menu that appears when you press and hold the Power button.
- **TalkBack:** Activate TalkBack, which provides voice feedback.
- **Font size:** Change the font size.
- **Magnification gestures:** Set the device to zoom in and out by tapping the screen three times.
- **Negative colours:** Reverse the display colours to improve visibility.
- **Colour adjustment:** Adjust the colour scheme for the screen when the device determines that you are colour blind or having difficulty reading content.
- **Accessibility shortcut:** Set the device to activate TalkBack when you press and hold the Power button, and then tap and hold the screen with two fingers.
- **Text-to-speech options:**
  - **Preferred TTS engine:** Select a speech synthesis engine. To change the settings for speech synthesis engines, tap .
  - **Speech rate:** Select a speed for the text-to-speech feature.
  - **Listen to an example:** Listen to the spoken text for an example.
- **Mono audio:** Enable mono sound when listening to audio with one earbud.
- **Turn off all sounds:** Mute all device sounds.
- **Assistant menu:** Set the device to show the assistive shortcut icon that helps you access functions supported by external buttons or features on the notifications panel. You can also edit the menu on the shortcut icon.
- **Tap and hold delay:** Set the recognition time for tapping and holding the screen.

## Language and input

Change the settings for text input. Some options may not be available depending on the selected language.

### Language

Select a display language for all menus and applications.

### Default

Select a default keyboard type for text input.

### Samsung keyboard

To change the Samsung keyboard settings, tap .



The available options may vary depending on the region.

- **Select input languages:** Select languages for text input.
- **Numbers and symbols:** Change the keyboard layout.
- **Predictive text:** Activate predictive text mode to predict words based on your input and show word suggestions. You can also customise the word prediction settings.
- **Auto replacement:** Set the device to correct misspelled and incomplete words by tapping the space bar or punctuation mark.
- **Auto capitalisation:** Set the device to automatically capitalise the first character after a final punctuation mark, such as a full stop, question mark, or exclamation mark.
- **Auto spacing:** Set the device to automatically insert a space between words.
- **Auto-punctuate:** Set the device to insert a full stop when you double-tap the space bar.
- **None:** Set the device to deactivate the keyboard swipe feature.
- **Continuous input:** Set the device to enter text by sweeping on the keyboard.
- **Cursor control:** Enable the smart keyboard navigation feature to move the cursor by scrolling the keyboard.
- **Sound:** Set the device to sound when a key is touched.
- **Character preview:** Set the device to display a large image of each character tapped.
- **Tutorial:** Access help information for using the Samsung keyboard.
- **Reset settings:** Reset Samsung keyboard settings.

## Google voice typing

To change the voice input settings, tap .

- **Choose input languages:** Select input languages for text input.
- **Block offensive words:** Set the device to prevent the device from recognising offensive words in voice inputs.
- **Offline speech recognition:** Download and install language data for offline voice input.

## Voice recogniser


Select a voice recognition engine.



This feature appears once you use a voice recognition application.

## Voice search


For Samsung voice recognition, use the following options:

- **Language:** Select a language for the voice recognition.
- **Open via the home key:** Set the device to launch **S Voice** by tapping  twice.
- **Use location data:** Set the device to use location information for voice search results.
- **Hide offensive words:** Hide offensive words from voice search results.
- **Help:** Access help information for **S Voice**.
- **About:** View version information.
- **Wake up command:** Set the device to start voice recognition by saying a wake up command while using **S Voice**.
- **Check missed events:** Set the device to check missed events when **S Voice** is launched by pressing the headset button.
- **Home address:** Enter your home address to use location information with the voice command feature.
- **Log in to Facebook:** Enter your Facebook account information to use Facebook with **S Voice**.
- **Log in to Twitter:** Enter your Twitter account information to use Twitter with **S Voice**.

For Google voice recognition, use the following options:

- **Language:** Select a language for the voice recognition.
- **Speech output:** Set the device to provide voice feedback to alert you to the current action.
- **Block offensive words:** Hide offensive words from voice search results.
- **Offline speech recognition:** Download and install language data for offline voice input.
- **Bluetooth headset:** Set the device to allow a voice search with a Bluetooth headset, when it is connected to the device.

### Text-to-speech options

- **Preferred TTS engine:** Select a speech synthesis engine. To change the settings for speech synthesis engines, tap .
- **Speech rate:** Select a speed for the text-to-speech feature.
- **Listen to an example:** Listen to the spoken text for an example.

### Pointer speed

Adjust the pointer speed for the mouse or trackpad connected to your device.

## Motion

Activate the motion recognition feature and change the settings that control motion recognition on your device.

- **Tilt to zoom:** Set the device to zoom in or out while viewing images in **Gallery** or browsing webpages, when you tap and hold two points with your fingers and then tilt the device back and forth.
- **Pan to move icon:** Set the device to move an item to another page when tapping and holding the item and then panning the device to the left or right.
- **Pan to browse images:** Set the device to scroll through an image by moving the device in any direction when the image is zoomed in.
- **Sensitivity settings:** Adjust the reaction speed for each motion.
- **Learn about motions:** View the tutorial for controlling motions.

- **Palm swipe to capture:** Set the device to capture an image of the screen when you sweep your hand to the left or right across the screen.
- **Palm touch to mute/pause:** Set the device to pause or mute media playback when you touch the screen with your palm.
- **Learn about hand motions:** View the tutorial for controlling hand motions.

## Voice control

Change settings to control options by voice commands.

## Accounts

### Add account

Add email or SNS accounts.

### Cloud

Change settings for syncing data or files with your Samsung account or Dropbox cloud storage.

### Backup and reset

Change the settings for managing settings and data.

- **Back up my data:** Set the device to back up settings and application data to the Google server.
- **Backup account:** Set up or edit your Google backup account.
- **Automatic restore:** Set the device to restore settings and application data when the applications are reinstalled on the device.
- **Factory data reset:** Reset settings to the factory default values and delete all data.

## More

### Location services

Change settings for location information permissions.

- **Access to my location:** Set the device to allow applications to use your current location information.
- **Use GPS satellites:** Set the device to use the GPS satellite for finding the current location.
- **Use wireless networks:** Set the device to allow location data collection or to determine the location of your device via Wi-Fi network.
- **My places:** Set up profiles that will be used for specific locations when you use GPS, Wi-Fi, or Bluetooth features to find your current location.

### Security

Change settings for securing the device.

- **Encrypt device:** Set a password to encrypt data saved on the device. You must enter the password each time you turn on the device.



Charge the battery before enabling this setting because it may take more than an hour to encrypt your data.

- **Encrypt external SD card:** Set the device to encrypt files on a memory card.



If you reset your device to the factory defaults with this setting enabled, the device will not be able to read your encrypted files. Disable this setting before resetting the device.

- **Make passwords visible:** Set the device to display passwords as they are entered.

- **Device administrators:** View device administrators installed on the device. You can allow device administrators to apply new policies to the device.
- **Unknown sources:** Choose to install applications from any source. If not chosen, download applications only from **Play Store**.
- **Verify apps:** Set this to allow Google to check the application for harmful behaviour before installing it.
- **Storage type:** Set a storage type for credential files.
- **Trusted credentials:** Use certificates and credentials to ensure secure use of various applications.
- **Install from device storage:** Install encrypted certificates stored on the USB storage.
- **Clear credentials:** Erase the credential contents from the device and reset the password.

## Application manager

View and manage the applications on your device.

## Battery

View the amount of battery power consumed by your device.

## Power

Change settings for power.

- **Auto power off:** Set the length of time the device waits before turning off.
- **Power saving mode:** Activate power-saving mode and change the settings for power-saving mode.
- **Fast power-on:** Activating this causes the device to start quickly for the next 24 hours.



## Storage

View memory information for your device and memory card, or format a memory card.



Formatting a memory card permanently deletes all data from it.



The actual available capacity of the internal memory is less than the specified capacity because the operating system and default applications occupy part of the memory. The available capacity may change when you upgrade the device.

## Date and time

Access and alter the following settings to control how the device displays the time and date.



If the battery remains fully discharged or removed from the device, the time and date is reset.

- **Set date:** Set the current date manually.
- **Set time:** Set the current time manually.
- **Select time zone:** Set the home time zone.
- **Use 24-hour format:** Display time in 24-hour format.
- **Select date format:** Select a date format.

## About device

Access device information and update device software.

## Google Settings

Use this application to configure settings for some features provided by Google.

Tap **Google Settings** on the Applications screen.

# Appendix

## Troubleshooting

Before contacting a Samsung Service Centre, please attempt the following solutions. Some situations may not apply to your device.



### The subject's eyes appear red

Red eyes occur when the subject's eyes reflect light from the camera flash.

Set the flash option to **Auto & red-eye** or **Red-eye fix**. (p. 83)



### Photos have dust spots

If dust particles are present in the air, you may capture them in photos when you use the flash.

- Turn the flash off or avoid taking photos in a dusty place.
- Adjust the ISO sensitivity. (p. 78)



### Photos are blurred

Blurring can occur if you take photos in low-light conditions or hold the device incorrectly.

- Half-press the Shutter button to ensure the subject is focused.
- Set the image stabiliser option.
- Use a tripod to prevent your device from shaking.



## Photos are blurred when shooting at night

As the camera tries to let in more light, the shutter speed slows. This can make it difficult to hold the camera steady long enough to take a clear picture and may result in device shake.

- Set **Night** in smart mode.
- Turn the flash on. (p. 83)
- Adjust the ISO sensitivity. (p. 78)
- Use a tripod to prevent your device from shaking.



## Subjects come out too dark because of backlighting

When the light source is behind the subject or when there is a high contrast between light and dark areas, the subject may appear too dark.

- Avoid shooting toward the sun.
- Set the flash option to **Fill in**. (p. 83)
- Adjust the exposure value. (p. 77)
- Set the metering option to **Spot** if a subject is in the centre of the frame.

## When you cannot take photos or videos

- Your storage may be full. Delete unnecessary files, or insert a new memory card.
- Format the memory card.
- The memory card may be defective. Purchase a new card.
- Ensure that the device is turned on.
- Charge the battery.
- Ensure that the battery is inserted. (p. 21)

## When the flash is not functional

- The flash option may be set to **Off**. (p. 83)
- In some modes, the flash is disabled.

## **When the flash fires unexpectedly**

The flash may fire unexpectedly due to static electricity. The device is not malfunctioning.

## **When the colours in the photo do not match the actual scene**

Select an appropriate white balance option to suit the light source. (p. 79)

## **When the photo is too bright or dark**

- Turn the flash off or on. (p. 83)
- Adjust the ISO sensitivity. (p. 78)
- Adjust the exposure value. (p. 77)

## **The lens barrel does not retract even when the power is off**

When you turn the power off while holding the lens barrel, the lens barrel may not be able to retract into the body. If this happens, do not force the lens barrel into the body. Take the device to your local Samsung Service Centre.

## **When you turn on your device or while you are using the device, it prompts you to enter the password**

When the device lock feature is enabled, you must enter the password you set for the device.

## **Your device does not turn on**

- When the battery is completely discharged, your device will not turn on. Charge the battery completely before turning on the device.
- The battery may not be inserted properly. Insert the battery again.
- Wipe both gold-coloured contacts and insert the battery again.

## The touch screen responds slowly or improperly

- If you attach a protective cover or optional accessories to the touch screen, the touch screen may not function properly.
- If you are wearing gloves, if your hands are not clean while touching the touch screen, or if you tap the screen with sharp objects or your fingertips, the touch screen may malfunction.
- The touch screen may malfunction in humid conditions or when exposed to water.
- Restart your device to clear any temporary software bugs.
- Ensure that your device software is upgraded to the latest version.
- If the touch screen is scratched or damaged, visit a Samsung Service Centre.

## Your device freezes or has fatal errors

If your device freezes or hangs, you may need to close applications or reinsert the battery and turn on the device to regain functionality. If your device is frozen and unresponsive, press and hold the Power button for 7 seconds to reboot.

If this does not solve the problem, perform a factory data reset. On the Applications screen, tap **Settings** → **Accounts** → **Backup and reset** → **Factory data reset** → **Reset device** → **Erase everything**. Before performing the factory data reset, remember to make backup copies of all important data stored on the device.

If the problem is still not resolved, contact a Samsung Service Centre.

## The internet is often disconnected

Ensure that you are not blocking the device's internal antenna.

## The battery icon is empty

Your battery is low. Recharge or replace the battery.

## **The battery does not charge properly (For Samsung-approved chargers)**

- Ensure that the charger is connected properly.
- If the battery terminals are dirty, the battery may not charge properly or the device may turn off. Wipe both gold-coloured contacts and try charging the battery again.
- The batteries in some devices are not user-replaceable. To have the battery replaced, visit a Samsung Service Centre.

## **The battery depletes faster than when first purchased**

- When you expose the battery to very cold or very hot temperatures, the useful charge may be reduced.
- Battery consumption increases when you use some applications, such as games or the Internet.
- The battery is consumable and the useful charge will get shorter over time.

## **Your device is hot to the touch**

When you use applications that require more power or use applications on your device for an extended period of time, your device may feel hot to the touch. This is normal and should not affect your device's lifespan or performance.

## **Error messages appear when launching the camera**

Your device must have sufficient available memory and battery power to operate the camera application. If you receive error messages when launching the camera, try the following:

- Charge the battery or replace it with a battery that is fully charged.
- Free some memory by transferring files to a computer or deleting files from your device.
- Restart the device. If you are still having trouble with the camera application after trying these tips, contact a Samsung Service Centre.

## Photo quality is poorer than the preview

- The quality of your photos may vary, depending on the surroundings and the photography techniques you use.
- If you take photos in dark areas, at night, or indoors, image noise may occur or images may be out of focus.

## Error messages appear when opening multimedia files

If you receive error messages or files do not play, when opening multimedia files on your device, try the following:

- Free some memory by transferring files to a computer or deleting files from your device.
- Ensure that the music file is not Digital Rights Management (DRM)-protected. If the file is DRM-protected, ensure that you have the appropriate licence or key to play the file.
- Ensure that your device supports the file type.
- Your device supports photos and videos captured with the device. Photos and videos captured by other devices may not work properly.
- Your device supports multimedia files that are authorised by providers of additional services. Some content circulated on the Internet, such as ringtones, videos, or wallpapers, may not work properly.

## Another Bluetooth device is not located

- Ensure that the Bluetooth wireless feature is activated on your device.
- Ensure that the Bluetooth wireless feature is activated on the device you wish to connect to.
- Ensure that your device and the other Bluetooth device are within the maximum Bluetooth range (10 m).

If the tips above do not solve the problem, contact a Samsung Service Centre.

## **A connection is not established when you connect the device to a computer**

- Ensure that the USB cable you are using is compatible with your device.
- Ensure that you have the proper driver installed and updated on your computer.
- If you are a Windows XP user, ensure that you have Windows XP Service Pack 3 or higher installed on your computer.
- Ensure that you have Samsung Kies or Windows Media Player 10 or higher installed on your computer.

## **Your device cannot find your current location**

GPS signals may be obstructed in some locations, such as indoors. Set the device to use Wi-Fi network to find your current location in these situations.

## **Data stored on the device has been lost**

Always make backup copies of all important data stored on the device. Otherwise, you cannot restore data if it is corrupted or lost. Samsung is not responsible for the loss of data stored on the device.

## **A small gap appears around the outside of the device case**

- This gap is a necessary manufacturing feature and some minor rocking or vibration of parts may occur.
- Over time, friction between parts may cause this gap to expand slightly.



## Using or storing the device

### Inappropriate places to use or store the device

- Avoid exposing the device to very cold or very hot temperatures.
- Avoid using your device in areas with extremely high humidity, or where the humidity changes drastically.
- Avoid exposing the device to direct sunlight and storing it in hot, poorly-ventilated areas, such as in a car during summer time.
- Protect your device and the display from impact, rough handling, and excessive vibration to avoid serious damage.
- Avoid using or storing your device in dusty, dirty, humid, or poorly-ventilated areas to prevent damage to moving parts and internal components.
- Do not use your device near fuels, combustibles, or flammable chemicals. Do not store or carry flammable liquids, gases, or explosive materials in the same compartment as the device or its accessories.
- Do not store the device where there are mothballs.

### Using on beaches or shores

- Protect your device from sand and dirt when you use it on beaches or in other similar areas.
- Your device is not waterproof. Do not handle the battery, adapter, or memory card with wet hands. Operating the device with wet hands may cause damage to your device.

### Storing for extended period of time

- When you store the device for an extended period, place it in a sealed container with an absorbent material, such as silica gel.
- Over time, unused batteries will discharge and must be recharged before use.
- The present date and time can be initialized when the device is turned on after the device and battery have been separated for a prolonged period.

## Using the device with caution in humid environments

When you transfer the device from a cold environment to a warm one, condensation can form on the lens or internal components of the device. In this situation, turn off the device and wait for at least 1 hour. If condensation forms on the memory card, remove the memory card from the device and wait until all moisture has evaporated before reinserting it.

## Other cautions

- Do not swing your device by the strap. This may cause injury to yourself or others or damage to your device.
- Do not paint your device, as paint can clog moving parts and prevent proper operation.
- Turn off the device when not using it.
- Your device consists of delicate parts. Avoid impacts to the device.
- Protect the display from external force by keeping it in the case when not in use. Protect the device from scratches by keeping it away from sand, sharp implements, or loose change.
- Do not use the device if the screen is cracked or broken. Broken glass or acrylic could cause injury to your hands and face. Take the device to a Samsung service centre to have it repaired.
- Never place devices, batteries, chargers, or accessories near, on, or in heating devices, such as microwave ovens, stoves, or radiators. These devices may be deformed and can overheat and cause a fire or explosion.
- Do not expose the lens to direct sunlight, as this may discolour the image sensor or cause it to malfunction.
- Protect your lens from fingerprints and scratches. Clean your lens with a soft, clean, debris-free lens cloth.
- The device may turn off if impacted from the outside. This is to protect the memory card. Turn on the device to use it again.

- While you use the device, it may heat up. This is normal and should not affect your device's lifespan or performance.
- When you use the device in low temperatures, it may take some time to turn on, the colour of the display may be changed temporarily, or after- images may appear. These conditions are not malfunctions and they will correct themselves when the device is returned to milder temperatures.
- Paint or metal on the outside of the device may cause allergies, itchy skin, eczema, or swelling for people with sensitive skin. If you experience any of these symptoms, stop using the device immediately and consult a doctor.
- Do not insert foreign objects into any of your device's compartments, slots, or access points. Damage due to improper use may not be covered by your warranty.
- Do not allow unqualified personnel to service the device or attempt to service the device yourself. Any damage that results from unqualified service is not covered by your warranty.
- Do not disassemble or puncture the battery, as this can cause explosion or fire.
- Wipe your device or charger with a towel or an eraser.
- Clean the battery terminals with a cotton ball or a towel.
- Do not use chemicals or detergents. Doing so may discolour or corrode the outside the device or may result in electric shock or fire.
- Avoid disturbing others when using the device in public.

### Cautions when using memory cards

- Avoid memory cards to very cold or very hot temperatures (below 0 °C or above 40 °C). Extreme temperatures can cause memory cards to malfunction.
- Insert a memory card in the correct direction. Inserting a memory card in the wrong direction may damage your device and memory card.
- Do not use memory cards that have been formatted by other devices or by a computer. Reformat the memory card with your device.
- Turn off the device when you insert or remove the memory card.

- Do not remove a card while the device is transferring or accessing information, as this could result in loss of data and/or damage to the card or device.
- When the lifespan of a memory card has expired, you cannot store any more photos on the card. Use a new memory card.
- Do not bend, drop, or subject memory cards to heavy impact or pressure.
- Avoid using or storing memory cards near strong magnetic fields.
- Avoid using or keeping memory cards in areas with high temperature, high humidity, or corrosive substances.
- Do not touch gold-coloured contacts or terminals with your fingers or metal objects. If dirty, wipe the card with a soft cloth.
- Prevent memory cards from making contact with liquids, dirt, or foreign substances. If dirty, wipe the memory card clean with a soft cloth before you insert the memory card in your device.
- Do not allow liquids, dirt, or foreign substances to come in contact with memory cards or the memory card slot. Doing so may cause memory cards or the device to malfunction.
- When you carry a memory card, use a case to protect the card from electrostatic discharges.
- Transfer important data to other media, such as a hard disk, CD, or DVD.
- When you use the device for an extended period, the memory card may become warm. This is normal and does not indicate a malfunction.
- Use a memory card that meets the standard requirements.



The manufacturer is not responsible for any loss of data.

## About the battery

Use only Samsung-approved batteries.



**Personal injury or death can occur if the battery is handled carelessly or improperly. For your safety, follow these instructions for proper battery handling:**

- The battery can ignite or explode if not handled properly. If you notice any deformities, cracks, or other abnormalities in the battery, immediately discontinue use of the battery and contact your manufacturer.
- Use only authentic, manufacturer-recommend battery chargers and charge the battery only by the method described in this user manual.
- Do not place the battery near heating devices or expose to excessively warm environments, such as the inside of an enclosed car in the summertime.
- Do not place the battery in a microwave oven.
- Avoid storing or using the battery in hot, humid places, such as spas or shower enclosures.
- Do not rest the device on flammable surfaces, such as bedding, carpets, or electric blankets for a prolonged period.
- When the device is switched on, do not leave it in any confined space for a prolonged period.
- Do not allow battery terminals to come in contact with metallic objects, such as necklaces, coins, keys, or watches.
- Use only authentic, manufacturer-recommended, Lithium-ion replacement batteries.
- Do not disassemble the battery or puncture it with any sharp object.
- Avoid exposing the battery to high pressure or crushing forces.
- Avoid exposing the battery to major impacts, such as dropping it from high places.
- Do not expose the battery to temperatures of 60 °C or above.
- Do not allow the battery to come in contact with moisture or liquids.
- Battery shall not be exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like.

### **Disposal guidelines**

- Dispose of the battery with care.
- Do not dispose of the battery in a fire.
- Disposal regulations may differ by country or region. Dispose of the battery in accordance with all local and federal regulations.

### **Guidelines for charging the battery**

Charge the battery only by the method described in this user manual. The battery can ignite or explode if not charged properly.

## **Notes about using the battery**

- Avoid exposing batteries to very cold or very hot temperatures (below 0 °C or above 40 °C). Extreme temperatures can reduce the charging capacity of your batteries.
- When you use the device for an extended period, the area around the battery chamber may become warm. This does not affect the normal use of the device.
- Do not pull the power supply cord to disconnect the plug from the power outlet, as this may cause a fire or electric shock.
- In temperatures below 0 °C, battery capacity and battery life may decrease.
- Battery capacity may decrease in low temperatures, but will return to normal in milder temperatures.
- Remove the batteries from your device when storing it for an extended period. Installed batteries may leak or corrode over time and cause serious damage to your device. Storing the device for extended periods with the battery installed causes the battery to discharge. You may not be able to recharge a fully discharged battery.
- When you do not use the device for an extended period (3 months or more), check the battery and recharge it regularly. If you let the battery discharge continually, its capacity and life may decrease, which can lead to a malfunction, fire, or explosion.
- Follow all instructions in this manual to ensure the longest lifespan of your device and battery. Damages or poor performance caused by failure to follow warnings and instructions can void your manufacturer's warranty.
- Your device may wear out over time. Some parts and repairs are covered by the warranty within the validity period, but damages or deterioration caused by using unapproved accessories are not.

## Cautions about using the battery

### Protect batteries, chargers, and memory cards from damage.

Prevent batteries from making contact with metal objects, as this can create a connection between the + and – terminals of your battery and lead to temporary or permanent battery damage and may cause a fire or electric shock.

## Notes about charging the battery

- If the battery is not charging, make sure that the battery is inserted correctly.
- If the device is not charging properly, the battery may not fully charge. Turn off the device before charging the battery.
- Do not use your device when you are charging the battery. This may cause a fire or electric shock.
- Do not pull the power supply cord to disconnect the plug from the power outlet, as this may cause a fire or electric shock.
- Let the battery charge for at least 10 minutes before turning on the device.
- If you connect the device to an external power source when the battery is depleted, using high energy-consuming functions will cause the device to turn off. To use the device normally, recharge the battery.
- Using the flash or recording videos depletes the battery quickly. Charge the battery fully.
- Overcharging batteries may shorten battery life. After charging is finished, disconnect the cable from your device.
- Do not bend or damage the AC cable.

## Notes about charging with a computer connected

- Use only the provided USB cable.
- The battery may not charge when:
  - you use a USB hub
  - other USB devices are connected to your computer
  - you connect the cable to the port on the front side of your computer
  - the USB port of your computer does not support the power output standard (5 V, 500 mA)

## Handle and dispose of batteries and chargers with care

- Never dispose of batteries in a fire. Follow all local regulations when you dispose of used batteries.
- Never place batteries or devices on or in heating devices, such as microwave ovens, stoves, or radiators. Batteries may explode when they are overheated.

## Malware and viruses

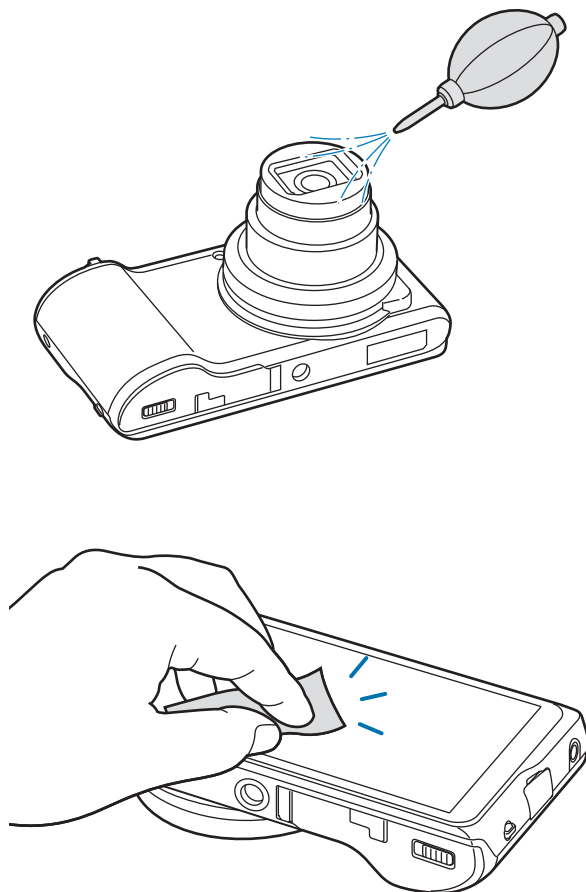
To protect your device from malware and viruses, follow these usage tips. Failure to do so may result in damages or loss of data that may not be covered by the warranty service.

- Do not download unknown applications.
- Do not visit untrusted websites.
- Delete suspicious messages or email from unknown senders.
- Set a password and change it regularly.
- Deactivate wireless features, such as Bluetooth, when not in use.
- If the device behaves abnormally, run an antivirus program to check for infection.
- Run an antivirus program on your device before you launch newly-downloaded applications and files.
- Install antivirus programs on your computer and run them regularly to check for infection.
- Do not edit registry settings or modify the device's operating system.
- Ensure that your device software and antivirus programs are upgraded to the latest version.



# Cleaning the device

Use an optional blower brush to remove dust, and then wipe the lens gently with a soft cloth. If any dust remains, apply lens cleaning liquid to a lens cleaning paper, and wipe gently.



Do not press on the lens cover, or use a blower brush on the lens cover.



Never use benzene, thinners, or alcohol to clean the device. These solutions can damage the camera or cause it to malfunction.

Some content may differ from your device depending on the region or software version, and is subject to change without prior notice.



The Samsung logo, consisting of the word "SAMSUNG" in white, bold, sans-serif capital letters, is centered within a dark, horizontally-oriented oval.

**EK-GC200**

# Quick Start Guide

**ENG** You can access the full user manual for more information.  
To learn to access the user manual, see "Viewing the user manual" in this quick start guide.  
FOR TECHNICAL SUPPORT, PLEASE CALL 1-800-SAMSUNG (726-7864).

[www.samsung.com](http://www.samsung.com)

## Copyright

Copyright © 2014 Samsung Electronics

This guide is protected under international copyright laws.

No part of this guide may be reproduced, distributed, translated, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or storing in any information storage and retrieval system, without the prior written permission of Samsung Electronics.

## Trademarks

- SAMSUNG and the SAMSUNG logo are registered trademarks of Samsung Electronics.
- Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc. worldwide.
- Wi-Fi<sup>®</sup>, Wi-Fi Protected Setup<sup>™</sup>, Wi-Fi Direct<sup>™</sup>, Wi-Fi CERTIFIED<sup>™</sup>, and the Wi-Fi logo are registered trademarks of the Wi-Fi Alliance.

Your device uses a non-harmonised frequency and is intended for use in all European countries. The WLAN can be operated in the EU without restriction indoors, but cannot be operated outdoors.

- HDMI, the HDMI logo and the term “High Definition Multimedia Interface” are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC.
- All other trademarks and copyrights are the property of their respective owners.



PlanetFirst represents Samsung Electronics' commitment to sustainable development and social responsibility through eco-driven business and management activities.

## About this guide

- Please read this guide before using the device to ensure safe and proper use.
- Descriptions are based on the device's default settings.
- Images and screenshots may differ in appearance from the actual product.
- Content may differ from your device depending on the software version and is subject to change without prior notice. For the latest version of the manual, refer to the Samsung website, [www.samsung.com](http://www.samsung.com).

- Content (high quality content) that requires high CPU and RAM usage will affect the overall performance of the device.
- Available features and additional services may vary by device or software.
- Applications and their functions may vary by country, region, or hardware specifications. Samsung is not liable for performance issues caused by applications from any provider other than Samsung.
- Samsung is not liable for performance issues or incompatibilities caused by edited registry settings or modified operating system software. Attempting to customise the operating system may cause the device or applications to work improperly.
- Software, sound sources, wallpapers, images, and other media provided with this device are licensed for limited use. Extracting and using these materials for commercial or other purposes is an infringement of copyright laws. Users are entirely responsible for illegal use of media.

- Default applications that come with the device are subject to updates and may no longer be supported without prior notice. If you have questions about an application provided with the device, contact a Samsung Service Centre. For user-installed applications, contact service providers.
- Modifying the device's operating system or installing softwares from unofficial sources may result in device malfunctions and data corruption or loss. These actions are violations of your Samsung licence agreement and will void your warranty.

## Instructional icons



**Warning:** situations that could cause injury to yourself or others



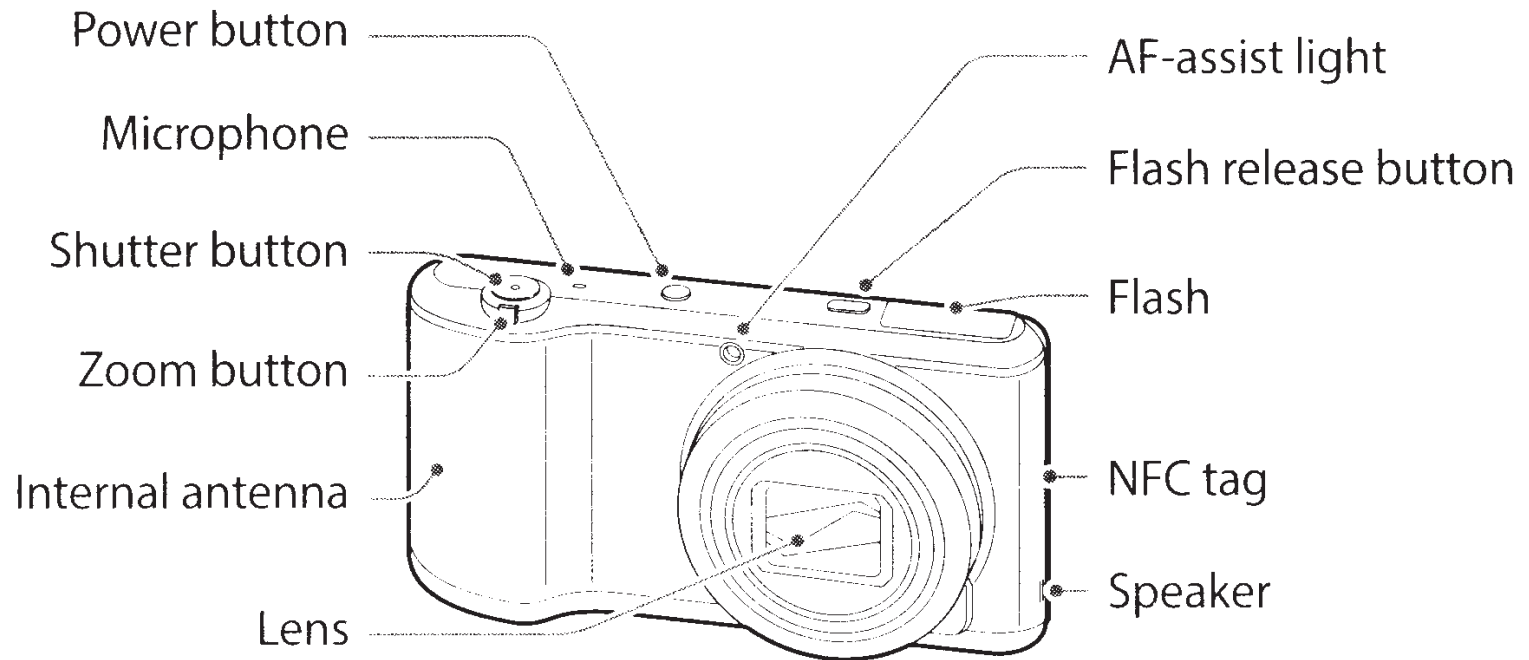
**Caution:** situations that could cause damage to your device or other equipment



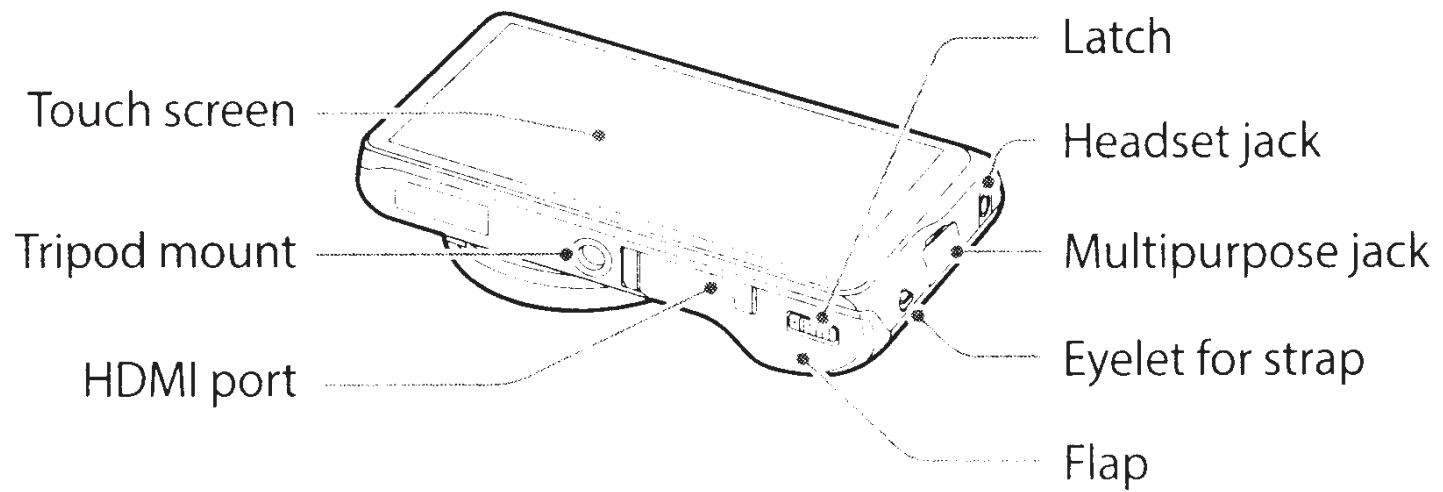
**Note:** notes, usage tips, or additional information

# Getting started

## Device layout









- For more information about the specifications and features of your device, go to the Samsung website.
- Do not cover the antenna area with your hands or other objects, except when you are taking photos or videos. This may cause connectivity problems or drain the battery.
- Do not use a screen protector. This causes sensor malfunctions.
- Do not allow water to contact the touch screen. The touch screen may malfunction in humid conditions or when exposed to water.

## Package contents

Check the product box for the following items. The items included in the box may differ from the list.

- Device
- Battery (AD43-00226A)
- USB cable (AD39-00190A)
- USB power adaptor (AD44-00179A)
- Hand strap  
(Black: AD63-07783A/White: AD63-07784A)
- Quick start guide (AD68-08310A)
- Quick reference guide (AD68-08313A)



Appearances and specifications are subject to change without prior notice.

## Optional accessories

You can purchase and use the following accessories with your device:

Battery, battery charger, flip cover, case, hand strap, screen protector, and HDMI cable



- For more information about available accessories, refer to the Samsung website.
- Make sure the accessories are compatible with the device before purchase.
- Use only Samsung-approved accessories. Malfunctions caused by using unapproved accessories are not covered by the warranty service.

## Buttons



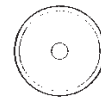
: Power button

- Press and hold to turn the device on or off.
- Press and hold for more than 7 seconds to reset the device if it has fatal errors or hang-ups, or freezes.
- Press to lock or unlock the device. The device goes into lock mode when the touch screen turns off.



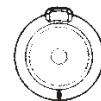
: Flash release button

- Press to pop the flash up.



: Shutter button

- In the camera application, half-press to focus on the subject. When the subject is in focus, the focus frame turns green. Press to take the photo.
- Press to turn the camera on.



: Zoom button

- In the camera application, rotate to zoom in or out.
- Rotate to adjust the device volume.

: Menu button

- Tap to open a list of options available for the current screen.
- Tap and hold on the Home screen to launch Google search.

: Home button

- Tap to return to the Home screen.
- Tap twice to launch **S Voice**.
- Tap and hold to open the list of recent applications.

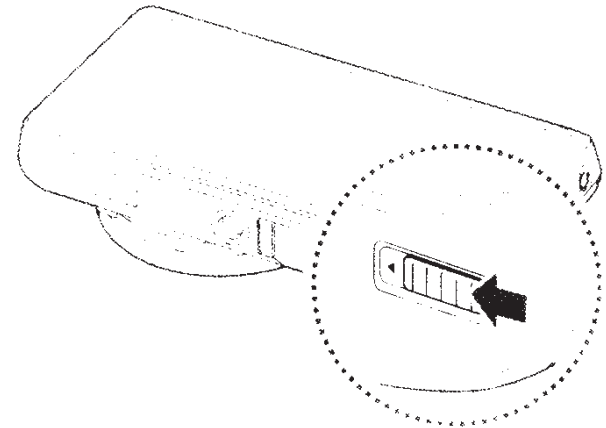
: Back button

- Tap to return to the previous screen.

## Installing the battery and memory card

Insert the included battery and optional memory card.

- 1 Slide the latch and open the flap.



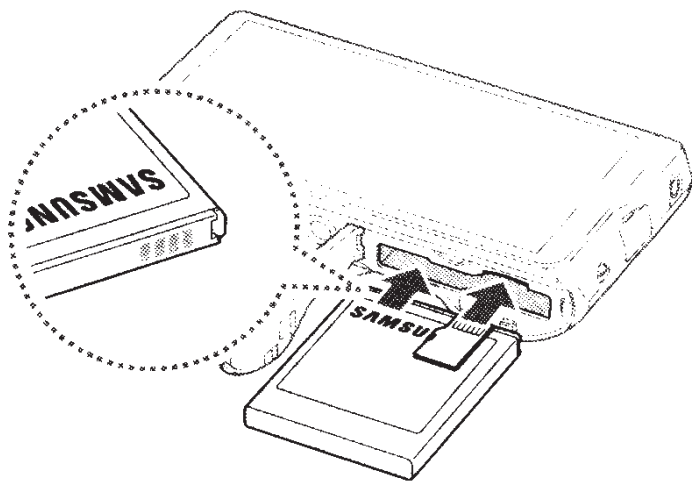


Do not bend or twist the battery cover excessively. Doing so may damage the cover.

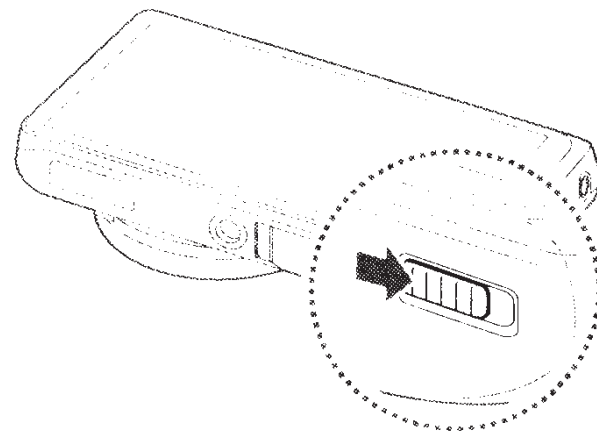


Make sure to properly align the gold-coloured contacts when inserting the battery or memory card.

2 Insert the battery and memory card.



3 Replace the flap and slide the latch.



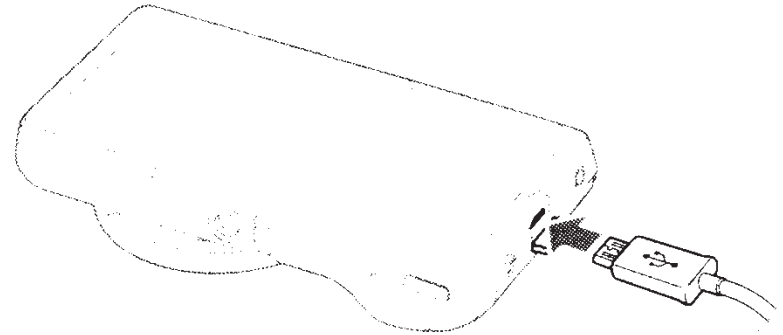
## Charging the battery

Before using the device for the first time or when the battery has been unused for extended periods, you must charge the battery.



Use only Samsung-approved chargers, batteries, and cables. Unapproved chargers or cables can cause the battery to explode or damage the device.

Connect the USB cable to the USB power adaptor and then plug the end of the USB cable into the multipurpose jack.



Connecting the charger improperly may cause serious damage to the device. Any damage caused by misuse is not covered by the warranty.

After fully charging, disconnect the device from the charger. First unplug the charger from the device, and then unplug it from the electric socket.



Do not remove the battery before removing the charger. This may damage the device.



- To save energy, unplug the charger when not in use. The charger does not have a power switch, so you must unplug the charger from the electric socket when not in use to avoid wasting power. The charger should remain close to the electric socket and easily accessible while charging.



- You can charge the device by connecting it to a computer with the supplied USB cable. You may not charge the device when it is connected to other devices, such as a set-top box or audio equipment.
- Overcharging or over-discharging batteries may shorten their lifespans.

## Checking the battery charge status

When you charge the battery while the device is off, the following icons will show the current battery charge status:



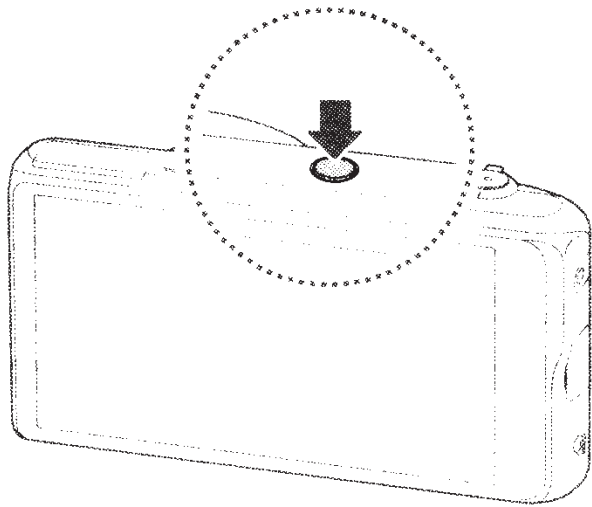
Charging



Fully charged

## Turning the device on and off

When turning on the device for the first time, follow the on-screen instructions to set up your device.



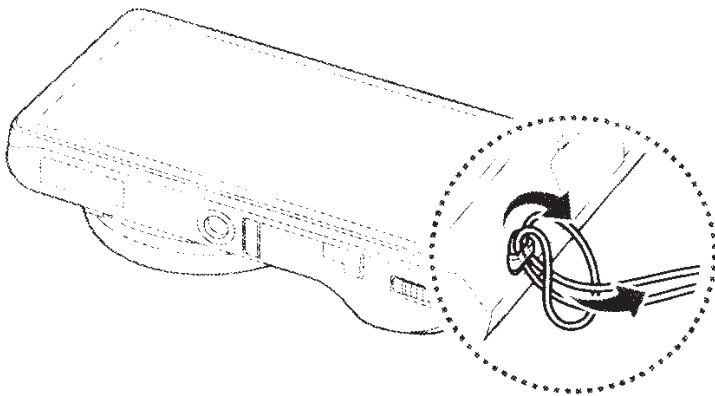
Press and hold the Power button for a few seconds to turn the device on. To turn the device off, press and hold the Power button for a few seconds, and then tap **Power off**.

## Connecting to a Wi-Fi network

On the Applications screen, tap **Settings** → **Connections** → **Wi-Fi**, and then drag the **Wi-Fi** switch to the right. Select a network from the list of detected Wi-Fi networks, enter a password if necessary, and then tap **Connect**.

## Attaching a hand strap

Slide the small end of a hand strap through the slot and push the large end through the loop.




Do not swing your device by the strap. This may cause injury to yourself or others or damage to your device.

## Using Camera

### Turning the camera on and off

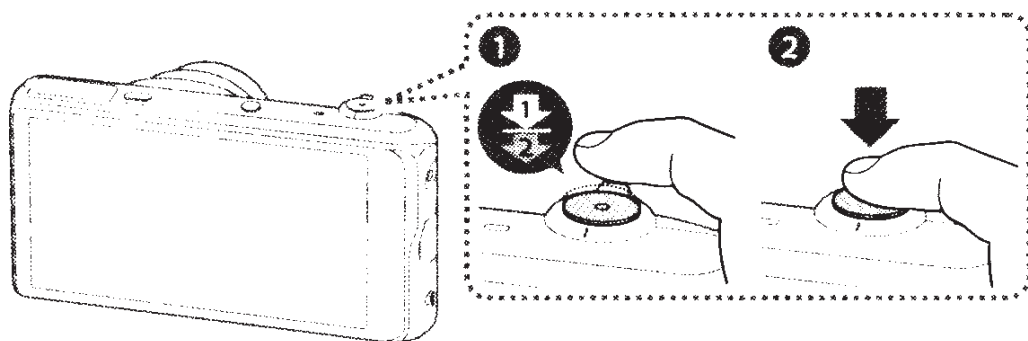
Use the camera application to take photos or videos and share them.


Tap **Camera** on the Applications screen. Alternatively, press the Shutter button.

Tap  to close the camera application and return to the Home screen.




## Taking photos

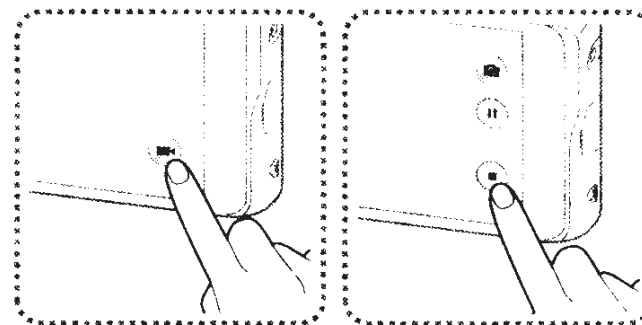
Half-press the Shutter button to focus on the subject. When the subject is in focus, the focus frame turns green. Press the Shutter button to take the photo.



Or, tap the image on the preview screen where the camera should focus. When the subject is in focus, the focus frame turns green. Tap  to take the photo.

## Taking videos



Tap  to take a video. While recording, tap  to pause the recording or tap  to take a photo. To stop recording, tap .



## Zooming in or out

You can take close-up photos or videos by adjusting the zoom. Rotate the Zoom button clockwise or spread two fingers apart on the screen to zoom in. Rotate the Zoom button anti-clockwise or pinch your fingers together on the screen to zoom out.

## Taking and sharing photos



Share photos as they are taken by setting sharing options. Tap  → , and then select an option.

- **Share shot:** Send a photo directly to another device via Wi-Fi Direct.

- **Buddy photo share:** Set the camera to recognise a person's face that you have tagged in a photo and send it to that person.
- **ChatON photo share:** Send a photo directly to another device via ChatON.
- **Remote viewfinder:** Set to use a mobile device as a remote shutter release.

## Taking and sharing photos via Wi-Fi Direct

You can take a photo with your device and automatically save it to a smart phone that is connected via Wi-Fi Direct.

- 1 On your device, in shooting mode, tap  →  → **Share shot** → **Wi-Fi direct Settings**.
- 2 On the smart phone, turn on the Wi-Fi Direct feature and select your device.
- 3 On your device, allow the smart phone to connect to your device.
- 4 On your device, take a photo.  
The photo is automatically transferred to the smart phone.


## Using Gallery

### Launching Gallery


You can view, edit, or share photos and videos.

Tap **Gallery** on the Applications screen. Alternatively, in the camera application, tap the image viewer icon.

### Editing photos

Select a photo, and then tap  → **Edit**. Edit the photo with various options.


## Trimming videos

Select a video, and then tap  → **Trim**. Move the start bracket to the desired starting point, and then move the end bracket to the desired ending point. Tap **Done**, and then enter a file name.

## Sharing files

Select a file and tap . Select a sharing method and follow the on-screen instructions.

## Sharing photos via email

- 1 In Gallery, select a photo.
- 2 Tap  → **Email**.  
Set up an email account when opening **Email** for the first time.
- 3 Set the file size.
- 4 Enter recipients, subject, and message, and then tap **Send**.

# Basics

## Using applications

Launch applications and take full advantage of features on your device.

Access the applications screen and select an application icon.


## Using Internet

Connect to the internet via Wi-Fi. Launch the Internet application to access webpages.

## Viewing the user manual

The user manual provides complete information about operating your device.

### From your device

- 1 Open the Internet application.
- 2 Tap  to open the bookmarks list.
- 3 Select the bookmark for the user manual.





The user manual may not be available depending on the web browser.

## From your computer

Access *www.samsung.com* and then search for the user manual by the model name of your device.

# Appendix

## Upgrading the device

The device can be upgraded to the latest software.

## Upgrading over the air

The device can be directly upgraded to the latest software by the firmware over-the-air (FOTA) service.

On the Applications screen, tap **Settings** → **More** → **About device** → **Software update** → **Update**.

## Upgrading with Samsung Kies

Launch Samsung Kies and connect the device to the computer. Samsung Kies automatically recognises the device and shows available updates in a dialogue box, if any. Click the Update button in the dialogue box to start upgrading. Refer to the Samsung Kies help for details on how to upgrade.



- Do not turn off the computer or the device, or disconnect the USB cable while the device is upgrading.
- While upgrading the device, do not connect other media devices to the computer. Doing so may interfere with the update process.

## Safety information

**This safety information contains content for devices. Some content may be not applicable to your device. To prevent injury to yourself and others or damage to your device, read the safety information about your device before using the device.**



## Warning

**Failure to comply with safety warnings and regulations can cause serious injury or death**

**Do not use damaged power cords or plugs, or loose electrical sockets**

Unsecured connections can cause electric shock or fire.

**Do not touch the power cord with wet hands or disconnect the charger by pulling the cord**

Doing so may result in electrocution.

**Do not bend or damage the power cord**

Doing so may cause electric shock or fire.

**Do not use your device while it is charging or touch your device with wet hands**

Doing so may cause electric shock.

**Do not short-circuit the charger or the device**

Doing so may cause electric shock or fire, or the battery may malfunction or explode.

**Do not use your device outdoor during a thunderstorm**

Doing so may result in electric shock or device malfunction.

### **Use manufacturer-approved batteries, chargers, accessories, and supplies**

- Using generic batteries or chargers may shorten the life of your device or cause the device to malfunction. They may also cause a fire or cause the battery to explode.
- Use only Samsung-approved battery and charger specifically designed for your device. Incompatible battery and charger can cause serious injuries or damage to your device.
- Samsung cannot be responsible for the user's safety when using accessories or supplies that are not approved by Samsung.

### **Do not drop or cause an impact to the charger or the device**

### **Handle and dispose of the device and charger with care**

- Never dispose of the battery or device in a fire. Never place the battery or device on or in heating devices, such as microwave ovens, stoves, or radiators. The device may explode when overheated. Follow all local regulations when disposing of used battery or device.
- Never crush or puncture the device.
- Avoid exposing the device to high external pressure, which can lead to an internal short circuit and overheating.

### **Protect the device, battery and charger from damage**

- Avoid exposing your device and battery to very cold or very hot temperatures.
- Extreme temperatures can damage the device and reduce the charging capacity and life of your device and battery.
- Prevent the battery from coming into contact with metal objects, as this can create a connection between the + and – terminals of your battery and lead to temporary or permanent battery damage.
- Never use a damaged charger or battery.

### **Do not store your device near or in heaters, microwaves, hot cooking equipment, or high pressure containers**

- The battery may leak.
- Your device may overheat and cause a fire.

### **Do not use or store your device in areas with high concentrations of dust or airborne materials**

Dust or foreign materials can cause your device to malfunction and may result in fire or electric shock.

**Prevent the multipurpose jack and the small end of the charger from contact with conductive materials, such as liquids, dust, metal powders, and pencil leads**

Conductive materials may cause a short circuit or corrosion of the terminals, which may result in an explosion or fire.

**Do not bite or suck the device or the battery**

- Doing so may damage the device or result in an explosion or fire.
- Children or animals can choke on small parts.
- If children use the device, make sure that they use the device properly.

**Do not insert the device or supplied accessories into the eyes, ears, or mouth**

Doing so may cause suffocation or serious injuries.

**Do not handle a damaged or leaking Lithium Ion (Li-Ion) battery**

For safe disposal of your Li-Ion battery, contact your nearest authorised service centre.



## Caution

**Failure to comply with safety cautions and regulations can cause injury or property damage**

**Do not use your device near other electronic devices**

- Most electronic devices use radio frequency signals. Your device may interfere with other electronic devices.

**Do not use your device in a hospital, on an aircraft, or in an automotive equipment that can be interfered with by radio frequency**

- Avoid using your device within a 15 cm range of a pacemaker, if possible, as your device can interfere with the pacemaker.
- To minimise possible interference with a pacemaker, use your device only on the side of your body that is opposite the pacemaker.
- If you use medical equipment, contact the equipment manufacturer before using your device to determine whether or not the equipment will be affected by radio frequencies emitted by the device.

- On an aircraft, using electronic devices can interfere with the aircraft's electronic navigational instruments. Make sure the device is turned off during takeoff and landing. After takeoff, you can use the device in flight mode if allowed by aircraft personnel.
- Turn off the device in a hospital and follow all regulations, posted warnings, and directions from medical personnel. Your device can interfere with medical equipment.
- Electronic devices in your car may malfunction, due to radio interference from your device. Contact the manufacturer for more information.

### **Do not expose the device to heavy smoke or fumes**

Doing so may damage the outside of the device or cause it to malfunction.

### **If you use a hearing aid, contact the manufacturer for information about radio interference**

The radio frequency emitted by your device may interfere with some hearing aids. Before using your device, contact the manufacturer to determine whether or not your hearing aid will be affected by radio frequencies emitted by the device.



**Do not use your device near devices or apparatuses that emit radio frequencies, such as sound systems or radio towers**

Radio frequencies may cause your device to malfunction.

**Turn off the device in potentially explosive environments**

- Turn off your device in potentially explosive environments instead of removing the battery.
- Always comply with regulations, instructions and signs in potentially explosive environments.

- Do not use your device at refuelling points (petrol stations), near fuels or chemicals, or in blasting areas.
- Do not store or carry flammable liquids, gases, or explosive materials in the same compartment as the device, its parts, or accessories.

**If you notice strange smells or sounds coming from your device or the battery, or if you see smoke or liquids leaking from the device or battery, stop using the device immediately and take it to a Samsung Service Centre**

Failure to do so may result in fire or explosion.

## **Comply with all safety warnings and regulations regarding device usage while operating a vehicle**

While driving, safely operating the vehicle is your first responsibility. Never use your device while driving, if it is prohibited by law.

## **Care and use your device properly**

### **Keep your device dry**

- Humidity and liquids may damage the parts or electronic circuits in your device.

- Do not turn on your device if it is wet. If your device is already on, turn it off and remove the battery immediately (if the device will not turn off or you cannot remove the battery, leave it as-is). Then, dry the device with a towel and take it to a service centre.
- Liquids will change the colour of the label that indicates water damage inside the device. Water damage to your device can void your manufacturer's warranty.

### **Store your device only on flat surfaces**

If your device falls, it may be damaged.

**Do not store your device in very hot or very cold areas. It is recommended to use your device at temperatures from 5 °C to 35 °C**

- Do not store your device in very hot areas such as inside a car in the summertime. Doing so may cause the screen to malfunction, result in damage to the device, or cause the battery to explode.
- Do not expose your device to direct sunlight for extended periods of time (on the dashboard of a car, for example).
- Store the battery at temperatures from 0 °C to 45 °C.

**Do not store your device with metal objects, such as coins, keys, and necklaces**

- Your device may be scratched or may malfunction.
- If the battery terminals come into contact with metal objects, this may cause a fire.

**Do not store your device near magnetic fields**

- Your device may malfunction or the battery may discharge from exposure to magnetic fields.
- Magnetic stripe cards, including credit cards, phone cards, passbooks, and boarding passes, may be damaged by magnetic fields.

**Do not use your device or applications for a while if the device is overheated**

Prolonged exposure of your skin to an overheated device may cause low temperature burn symptoms, such as red spots and pigmentation.

**Do not use your device with the flap open**

The battery may fall out of the device, which may result in damage or malfunction.

**If your device has a camera flash or light, do not use it close to the eyes of people or pets**

Using a flash close to the eyes may cause temporary loss of vision or damage to the eyes.

**Use caution when exposed to flashing lights**

- While using your device, leave some lights on in the room and do not hold the screen too close to your eyes.
- Seizures or blackouts can occur when you are exposed to flashing lights while watching videos or playing Flash-based games for extended periods. If you feel any discomfort, stop using the device immediately.
- If anyone related to you has experienced seizures or blackouts while using a similar device, consult a physician before using the device.
- If you feel discomfort, such as a muscle spasm, or disoriented, stop using the device immediately and consult a physician.

- To prevent eye strain, take frequent breaks while using the device.

### **Reduce the risk of repetitive motion injuries**

When you repetitively perform actions, such as pressing keys, drawing characters on a touch screen with your fingers, or playing games, you may experience occasional discomfort in your hands, neck, shoulders, or other parts of your body. When using your device for extended periods, hold the device with a relaxed grip, press the keys lightly, and take frequent breaks. If you continue to have discomfort during or after such use, stop using the device and consult a physician.

### **Protect your hearing and ears when using a headset**



- Excessive exposure to loud sounds can cause hearing damage.
- Exposure to loud sounds while walking may distract your attention and cause an accident.
- Always turn the volume down before plugging the earphones into an audio source and use only the minimum volume setting necessary to listen to music.
- In dry environments, static electricity can build up in the headset. Avoid using headsets in dry environments or touch a metal object to discharge static electricity before connecting a headset to the device.

- Do not use a headset while driving or riding. Doing so may distract your attention and cause an accident, or may be illegal depending on your region.

### **Use caution when using the device while walking or moving**

- Always be aware of your surroundings to avoid injury to yourself or others.
- Make sure the headset cable does not become entangled in your arms or on nearby objects.

### **Do not carry your device in your back pockets or around your waist**

You could be injured or damage the device if you fall.

### **Do not paint or put stickers on your device**

- Paint and stickers can clog moving parts and prevent proper operation.
- If you are allergic to paint or metal parts of the device, you may experience itching, eczema, or swelling of the skin. When this happens, stop using the device and consult your physician.

### **Do not use the device if it is cracked or broken**

Broken glass or acrylic could cause injury to your hands and face. Take the device to a Samsung Service Centre to have it repaired.

### **Install devices and equipment with caution**

- Ensure that any devices or related equipment installed in your vehicle are securely mounted.
- Avoid placing your device and accessories near or in an airbag deployment area. Improperly installed wireless equipment can cause serious injury when airbags inflate rapidly.

### **Do not drop your device or cause impacts to your device**

- Your device may be damaged or may malfunction.
- If bent or deformed, your device may be damaged or parts may malfunction.

### **Ensure maximum battery and charger life**

- Avoid charging your device for more than a week, as overcharging may shorten battery life.
- Over time, unused device will discharge and must be recharged before use.
- Disconnect the charger from power sources when not in use.
- Use the battery only for their intended purposes.
- Leaving batteries unused over time may reduce their lifespan and performance. It may also cause the batteries to malfunction or explode, or cause a fire.

- Follow all instructions in this manual to ensure the longest lifespan of your device and battery. Damages or poor performance caused by failure to follow warnings and instructions can void your manufacturer's warranty.
- Your device may wear out over time. Some parts and repairs are covered by the warranty within the validity period, but damages or deterioration caused by using unapproved accessories are not.

### **Do not disassemble, modify, or repair your device**

- Any changes or modifications to your device can void your manufacturer's warranty. If your device needs servicing, take your device to a Samsung Service Centre.

- Do not disassemble or puncture the battery, as this can cause explosion or fire.
- Turn off the device before removing the battery. If you remove the battery with the device turned on, it may cause the device to malfunction.

### **When cleaning your device, mind the following**

- Wipe your device or charger with a towel or an eraser.
- Clean the battery terminals with a cotton ball or a towel.
- Do not use chemicals or detergents. Doing so may discolour or corrode the outside the device or may result in electric shock or fire.



## **Do not use the device for anything other than its intended use**

Your device may malfunction.

## **Avoid disturbing others when using the device in public**

## **Allow only qualified personnel to service your device**

Allowing unqualified personnel to service your device may result in damage to your device and will void your manufacturer's warranty.

## **Handle memory cards or cables with care**

- When inserting a card or connecting a cable to your device, make sure that the card is inserted or the cable is connected to the proper side.

- Do not remove a card while the device is transferring or accessing information, as this could result in loss of data and/or damage to the card or device.
- Protect cards from strong shocks, static electricity, and electrical noise from other devices.
- Do not touch gold-coloured contacts or terminals with your fingers or metal objects. If dirty, wipe the card with a soft cloth.
- Inserting a card or connecting a cable by force or improperly may result in damage to the multipurpose jack or other parts of the device.

## **Protect your personal data and prevent leakage or misuse of sensitive information**

- While using your device, be sure to back up important data. Samsung is not responsible for the loss of any data.
- When disposing of your device, back up all data and then reset your device to prevent misuse of your personal information.
- Carefully read the permissions screen when downloading applications. Be particularly cautious with applications that have access to many functions or to a significant amount of your personal information.
- Check your accounts regularly for unapproved or suspicious use. If you find any sign of misuse of your personal information, contact your service provider to delete or change your account information.
- In the event your device is lost or stolen, change the passwords on your accounts to protect your personal information.
- Avoid using applications from unknown sources and lock your device with a pattern, password, or PIN.

## **Do not distribute copyright-protected material**

Do not distribute copyright-protected material without the permission of the content owners. Doing this may violate copyright laws. The manufacturer is not liable for any legal issues caused by the user's illegal use of copyrighted material.

## **Malware and viruses**

**To protect your device from malware and viruses, follow these usage tips. Failure to do so may result in damages or loss of data that may not be covered by the warranty service**

- Do not download unknown applications.

- Do not visit untrusted websites.
- Delete suspicious messages or email from unknown senders.
- Set a password and change it regularly.
- Deactivate wireless features, such as Bluetooth, when not in use.
- If the device behaves abnormally, run an antivirus program to check for infection.
- Run an antivirus program on your device before you launch newly-downloaded applications and files.
- Install antivirus programs on your computer and run them regularly to check for infection.
- Do not edit registry settings or modify the device's operating system.

- Ensure that your device software and antivirus programs are upgraded to the latest version.

Dispose unwanted electronics through an approved recycler.

To find the nearest recycling location, go to our website:

[www.samsung.com/recyclingdirect](http://www.samsung.com/recyclingdirect) Or call,  
(877) 278 - 0799

WARNING: This product contains chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive toxicity.

## FCC Notice

### Caution:

Any changes or modifications in construction of this device which are not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

### NOTE:

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorientate, or relocate, the receiving antenna.
- Increase the distance between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.



**FCC ID: A3LEKGC200**

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**FCC RF Radiation Exposure Statement:**

This equipment complies with FCC RF Radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This device and its antenna must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

**Caution:**

Any changes or modifications to the equipment not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void user's authority to operate the equipment.

IC: 649E-EKGC200

**Declaration of Conformity**

Trade Name : Samsung Electronics America, Inc.

Model No. : Samsung EKGC200

Responsible Party: Samsung Electronics America, Inc.

Address : 85 Challenger Road, Ridgefield Park, NJ 07660

Telephone No.: 1-800-SAMSUNG (726-7864)

This device complies with Industry Canada License-Exempt RSS standard (S)

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**CAUTION**

**RISK OF EXPLOSION IF BATTERY IS REPLACED BY  
AN INCORRECT TYPE.**

**DISPOSE OF USED BATTERIES ACCORDING  
TO THE INSTRUCTIONS.**

Some content may differ from your device depending on the region or software version, and is subject to change without prior notice.

### About the Samsung Kies Kies

Samsung Kies is a computer application that manages and syncs media libraries and contacts with Samsung devices.

Download the latest version of Samsung Kies from the Samsung website ([www.samsung.com/kies](http://www.samsung.com/kies)) and install it on your computer.



# Samsung GALAXY Camera<sup>TM</sup> SMART CAMERA User Manual

Please read this manual before operating your camera, and keep it for future reference.



## Intellectual Property

All Intellectual Property, as defined below, owned by or which is otherwise the property of Samsung or its respective suppliers relating to the SAMSUNG Galaxy Camera, including but not limited to, accessories, parts, or software relating there to (the “Galaxy Camera System”), is proprietary to Samsung and protected under federal laws, state laws, and international treaty provisions. Intellectual Property includes, but is not limited to, inventions (patentable or unpatentable), patents, trade secrets, copyrights, software, computer programs, and related documentation and other works of authorship. You may not infringe or otherwise violate the rights secured by the Intellectual Property. Moreover, you agree that you will not (and will not attempt to) modify, prepare derivative works of, reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, or otherwise attempt to create source code from the software. No title to or ownership in the Intellectual Property is transferred to you. All applicable rights of the Intellectual Property shall remain with SAMSUNG and its suppliers.

## Open Source Software

Some software components of this product incorporate source code covered under GNU General Public License (GPL), GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), OpenSSL License, BSD License and other open source licenses. To obtain the source code covered under the open source licenses, please visit:

<http://opensource.samsung.com>.

Samsung Electronics America (SEA), Inc

Address: 85 Challenger Road

Ridgefield Park,

New Jersey

07660

EK-GC110\_UM\_English\_MC2\_WB\_041113\_F2



Toll Free 1-800-SAMSUNG

Telephone:

Internet <http://www.samsung.com>

Address:

Samsung is a registered trademark of Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd.

Do you have questions about your Samsung Mobile Device?

For 24 hour information and assistance, we offer a new FAQ/ARS System (Automated Response System) at:

[www.samsung.com/us/support](http://www.samsung.com/us/support)

Nuance<sup>®</sup>, VSuite<sup>™</sup>, T9<sup>®</sup> Text Input, and the Nuance logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Nuance Communications, Inc., or its affiliates in the United States and/or other countries.

ACCESS<sup>®</sup> and NetFront<sup>™</sup> are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan and other countries.

The Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> word mark, figure mark (stylized "B Design"), and combination mark (Bluetooth word mark and "B Design") are registered trademarks and are wholly owned by the Bluetooth SIG.

microSD<sup>™</sup> and the microSD logo are Trademarks of the SD Card Association.

Openwave<sup>®</sup> is a registered Trademark of Openwave, Inc.

Google, the Google logo, Android, the Android logo, Google Play, Gmail, Google Mail, Google Maps, Google Music, Google Talk, Picasa, YouTube and other marks are trademarks of Google Inc.

Wi-Fi is a registered trademark of the Wireless Fidelity Alliance, Inc.

Swype and the Swype logos are trademarks of Swype, Inc. © 2010 Swype, Inc. All rights reserved.

**DIVX**<sub>HD</sub>, DivX<sup>®</sup>, DivX Certified<sup>®</sup> and associated logos are trademarks of Rovi Corporation or its subsidiaries and are used under license.

DivX Certified<sup>®</sup> to play DivX<sup>™</sup> video up to HD 720p, including premium content.

ABOUT DIVX VIDEO: DivX<sup>®</sup> is a digital video format created by DivX, LLC, a subsidiary of Rovi Corporation. This is an official DivX Certified<sup>®</sup> device that plays DivX video. Visit [www.divx.com](http://www.divx.com) for more information and software tools to convert your files into DivX videos.

# Table of Contents

<b>Section 1: Getting Started .....</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>Bottom View of Your Camera .....</b>	<b>24</b>
Setting Up Your Camera .....	5	Display Layout .....	24
Charging a Battery .....	7	Menu Navigation .....	33
Switching the Camera On or Off .....	9	Customizing Your Home Screen .....	38
Locking and Unlocking the Touch Screen .....	9	Notification Bar .....	42
Configuring your Camera .....	9	Memory Card .....	43
Creating a New Google Account .....	12	<b>Section 4: Entering Text .....</b>	<b>45</b>
Retrieving your Google Account Password .....	12	Text Input Methods .....	45
Creating a Samsung Account .....	12	Entering Text Using the Samsung Keyboard .....	45
<b>Section 2: Camera Operation .....</b>	<b>14</b>	Changing the Text Input Mode - Keypad .....	46
Camera .....	14	Using ABC Mode .....	46
Using the Camera .....	14	Using Symbol/Numeric Mode .....	47
Zoom Feature .....	15	Predictive Text .....	47
Camera Modes .....	16	Samsung Keyboard Settings .....	48
Quick Settings .....	17	Entering Text Using Continuous Input .....	48
Camera and Camcorder Settings .....	18	Using the Google Voice Typing Feature .....	48
Using the Camcorder .....	20	<b>Section 5: Contacts and Your Address Book .....</b>	<b>50</b>
<b>Section 3: Understanding Your Camera .....</b>	<b>22</b>	View your Address Book .....	50
Features of Your Camera .....	22	Adding a New Contact .....	50
Your Camera at a Glance .....	23	Editing an Existing Contact .....	52

Finding an Address Book Entry .....	52	Google + .....	69
Joining Contacts .....	52	Messenger .....	70
Synchronizing Accounts .....	54	ChatON .....	70
Address Book Options .....	54	<b>Section 8: Changing Your Settings .....</b>	<b>71</b>
Groups .....	56	Accessing Settings .....	71
Address Book Favorites .....	58	Wi-Fi Settings .....	71
Managing Address Book Contacts .....	58	Bluetooth settings .....	72
<b>Section 6: Multimedia .....</b>	<b>59</b>	Data Usage .....	72
Music Player .....	59	More Settings .....	73
Using Playlists .....	61	Blocking mode .....	76
Google Play Music .....	62	Sound .....	76
Video Player .....	62	Display .....	77
Play Movies & TV .....	63	Storage .....	78
Gallery .....	63	Power .....	78
Photo Wizard .....	64	Battery .....	79
Video Editor .....	64	Application Manager .....	79
Instagram .....	65	Location Services .....	81
<b>Section 7: Messaging .....</b>	<b>66</b>	Lock Screen Settings .....	81
Types of Messages .....	66	Security .....	82
Using Email .....	66	Language and input .....	85
Using Gmail .....	68	Back up and reset .....	89
Google Talk .....	69	Add Account .....	90

Motion .....	91
Accessory Settings .....	91
Date and time .....	92
Accessibility .....	92
Developer options .....	93
About Device .....	95
<b>Section 9: Connections .....</b>	<b>97</b>
Internet .....	97
Wi-Fi .....	103
Bluetooth .....	107
PC Connections .....	110
<b>Section 10: Applications .....</b>	<b>112</b>
AllShare Play .....	112
Calculator .....	116
Calendar .....	116
Camera .....	118
ChatON .....	118
Chrome .....	118
Clock .....	118
Contacts .....	121
Downloads .....	121
Dropbox .....	122

Email .....	122
Gallery .....	123
Game Hub .....	123
Gmail .....	123
Google .....	123
Google + .....	123
Google Settings .....	123
Group Play .....	124
Help .....	125
Instagram .....	125
Internet .....	125
Local .....	125
Maps .....	125
Messenger .....	126
Music Player .....	126
My Files .....	126
Navigation .....	127
Paper Artist .....	129
Photo Wizard .....	129
Play Books .....	129
Play Magazines .....	130
Play Movies & TV .....	130

Play Music .....	130	Display / Touch-Screen .....	147
Play Store .....	130	GPS .....	148
S Memo .....	131	Care and Maintenance .....	149
S Suggest .....	133	Responsible Listening .....	150
S Voice .....	133	Operating Environment .....	152
Samsung Apps .....	134	Restricting Children's Access to Your Mobile Device .....	154
Settings .....	134	FCC Notice and Cautions .....	154
Talk .....	134	Other Important Safety Information .....	154
Video Editor .....	134	<b>Section 12: Warranty Information .....</b>	<b>156</b>
Video Player .....	134	Standard Limited Warranty .....	156
Voice Search .....	134	End User License Agreement for Software .....	161
Weather .....	135	<b>Index .....</b>	<b>166</b>
YouTube .....	135		
<b>Section 11: Health and Safety Information .....</b>	<b>137</b>		
Exposure to Radio Frequency (RF) Signals.....	137		
Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) Certification Information .....	142		
FCC Part 15 Information to User .....	144		
Smart Practices While Driving .....	144		
Battery Use and Safety .....	145		
Samsung Mobile Products and Recycling .....	146		
UL Certified Travel Charger .....	147		

## Section 1: Getting Started

---

This section explains how to start using your camera by first configuring your hardware, and setting up Google and Samsung accounts.

### Setting Up Your Camera

Prior to use it is necessary to install both the battery and microSD™ card into their corresponding internal compartments.

#### *Opening the Battery Compartment*

1. From the bottom of the camera, open the battery compartment by sliding the cover lock to the left (1).



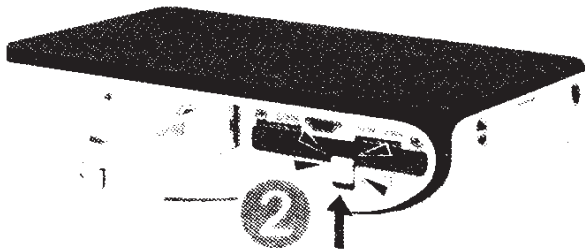
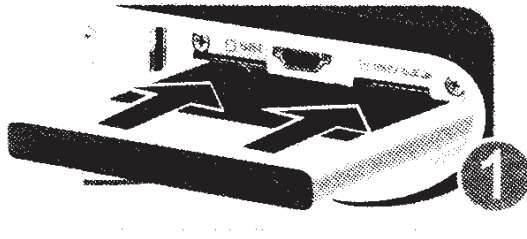
2. Swing the compartment cover open (2).



#### *Installing the Battery*

1. Insert the battery into the opening on the back of the camera, making sure the connectors align (1).

2. Gently press in to secure the battery (2).



### *Installing and Removing the Memory Card*

You can use a microSD™ (SD) or microSDHC™ card to expand available memory space if you desire. This secure digital card enables you to exchange images, music, and data between SD-compatible devices. This type of memory card is designed for use with this camera and other devices.

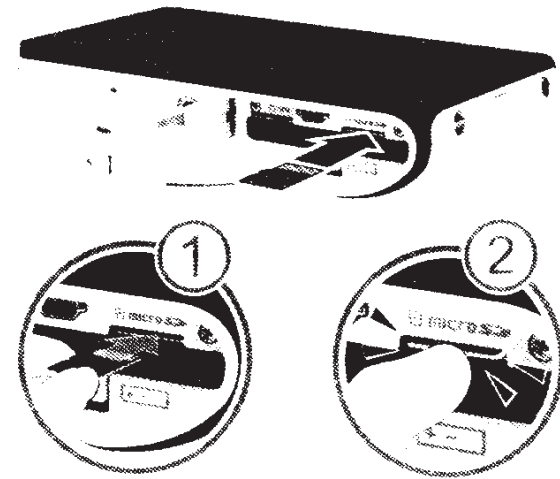
---

**Note:** Your camera has been tested to support up to a 64GB memory card.

---

### *Installing the Memory Card*

- Push the microSD card into the slot (1) until it clicks (2).
- Make sure the microSD's gold contact pins face toward the camera screen and the card is securely inserted.



For more information on Memory Cards, see “Memory Card” on page 43.



### ***Removing the Memory Card***

1. Push on the memory card until it clicks and is released.
2. Grasp the memory card and remove it from the camera.

#### ***Closing the Battery Compartment***

1. Close the battery compartment door.
2. Slide the cover lock to the Right as shown below..



---

**Note:** Make sure the battery is properly installed and the cover is securely closed before switching on the camera.

---

### ***Charging a Battery***

Your device is powered by a rechargeable Li-ion battery. The Travel Charger that is used to charge the battery, is included with your device. Use only Samsung-approved batteries and chargers.

---

**Note:** You must fully charge the battery before using your camera for the first time. A discharged battery recharges fully in approximately 4 hours.

---

---

**Note:** Long backlight settings, searching for service, vibrate mode, web browser use, and other variables may reduce the battery's charge.

---

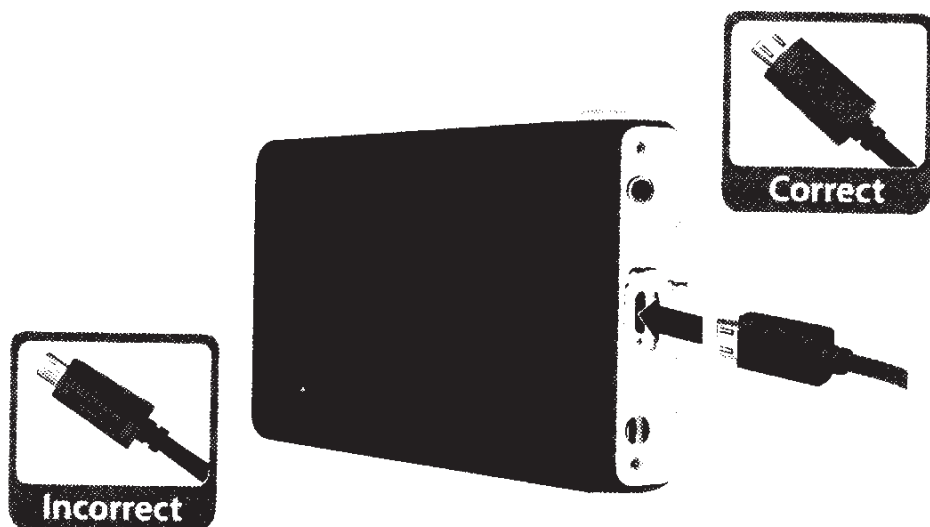
Although you can use the camera while the battery is charging, doing so will require additional charging time.

### ***Removing the Memory Card***

---

**Important!** Verify that the camera battery is installed prior to connection. If the battery is not properly installed and the wall charger is connected, the camera may power off and on continuously, preventing proper operation.

---



1. Remove the plastic cover, then plug the flat end of the Travel Charger into the Power/Accessory Interface connector and the other end into a standard AC wall outlet.
2. When charging is finished, remove the flat end from the interface connector jack on the camera.

---

**Important!** If your handset has a touch screen display, please note that a touch screen responds best to a light touch from the pad of your finger. Using excessive force or a metallic object when pressing on the touch screen may damage the tempered glass surface and void the warranty. For more information, refer to “*Standard Limited Warranty*” on page 156.

---

---

**Note:** Failure to unplug the wall charger before you remove the battery, can cause damage to the camera.

---

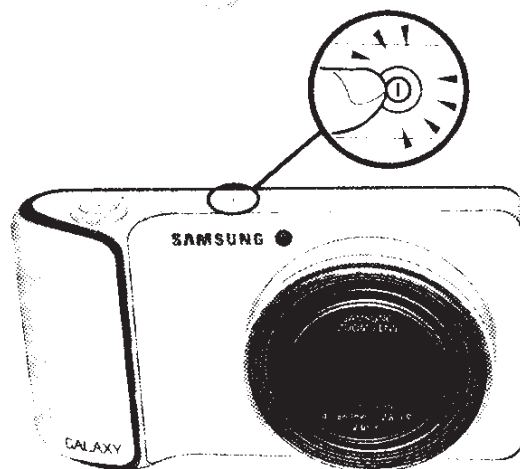
### ***Low Battery Indicator***

When the battery is weak, the battery icon (■) blinks and the device sounds a warning tone at regular intervals. In this condition, your camera conserves its remaining battery power, not by turning off the backlight, but by entering the dimming mode. For a quick check of your battery level, glance at the battery charge indicator located in the upperright corner of your device's display. Solid color (■) indicates a full charge connection.

When the battery level becomes too low, the camera automatically turns off.

## Switching the Camera On or Off

1. Press and hold  until the camera switches on.




2. Swipe your finger across the screen to unlock the camera.



---

**Note:** The display language is preset to English at the factory. To change the language, use the Language menu. For more information, refer to “Changing Your Settings” on page 71.

---

3. To switch off the camera, press and hold , until the **Device options** screen displays.
4. Tap **Power off** to switch off the camera.
5. At the **Power off** prompt, tap **OK**.

## Locking and Unlocking the Touch Screen

1. Press  to lock the touch screen.
2. Press  again to display the lock screen then swipe your finger across the screen to unlock.

## Configuring your Camera

When you first turn on your camera, you will need to set up a few things.

1. The Samsung Galaxy welcome screen displays. The default language for your camera is English. If you would like to select another language, tap **English** and select one of the listed languages.
2. Tap **Start** to begin.  
The camera firmware will begin to update.

## Set Date and Time

1. Tap **Set date**, set the date (month, day, year), if necessary.

2. Tap **Set time**, set the time (hour, minute, and AM or PM), if necessary.

3. Tap **Select time zone** and select the correct time zone.

4. Touch **Finish**.

After the firmware has been updated, tap **OK** to restart. The Camera viewfinder is displayed.

1. Tap Home .

The **Wi-Fi** screen is displayed.

2. Select an available Wi-Fi network to set up a Wi-Fi connection. For more information, refer to “Wi-Fi” on page 103.

– or –

Tap **Skip** to continue without setting up **Wi-Fi**. Tap **Next** if you connected to a Wi-Fi.

3. At the **Samsung account** display, tap **Create new account** if you do not have an existing Samsung account, then follow the on-screen instructions.

– or –

If you already have a Samsung account, tap **Sign in** and follow the on-screen instructions.

– or –

Tap **Skip** to continue without setting up a Samsung account.

4. At the **Got Google?** display, tap **Yes** if you already have a Google account or **No** if you do not.

5. Follow the on-screen instructions to create a new Google account or sign in to an existing account.

If you want to wait until later to create a Google account, tap **Not now**.

---

**Note:** In order to utilize your device to the fullest extent, you will need to create a Google™ Account when you first use your device. With a Google Account, you will have access to more Google applications and applications will always be in sync between your camera and computer.

---

## Entertainment

This screen displays if you signed in to your Google account.


- Touch **Set up a credit card**, enter credit card information for your Google Play account, and touch **Save**.

– or –

Touch **Not now**.


## Backup and restore


This screen also displays if you signed in to your Google account.

1. Read the backup and restore information.
2. Enable either or both options.
3. Touch  to continue.


The Restoring screen displays while your information is being restored.

## Google & location

1. Read the information on the screen and enable either or both of the Google location services.
2. At the **Google & location** screen, a blue checkmark appears next to the text that explains that you allow Google's location service to collect anonymous location data from your camera. If you disagree, tap the checkmark to remove it.
3. A blue checkmark also appears next to the text that explains that you allows your location to be used for Google search results and other Google services. If you disagree, tap the checkmark to remove it.
4. Touch  to continue. Free Dropbox Account.

5. Enter your First and Last name at the This phone belongs to... pop-up menu or touch  to skip this option.

To get a free 50 GB Dropbox account for two years:

1. Touch **Disclaimer** to read a short disclaimer about this offer. Touch **OK**.
2. Touch **Create a new Dropbox account**, enter the required fields, and touch **Register for Dropbox**.  
– or –  
Touch **I already have an account** to sign in to Dropbox.  
– or –
3. Touch **No thanks** to skip this offer.
4. In the provided fields, enter your **First** and **Last** name so that your camera can personalize some applications. Tap .

## Setup Complete

Congratulations! Your device is set up and ready to use.



- Touch **Finish**.

The main Home screen displays.

## Creating a New Google Account

In order to utilize your device to the fullest extent, you will need to create a Google™ Account when you first use your device. With a Google Account, Google applications will always be in sync between your camera and computer.

If you did not create a new account during the setup procedure when you first turned your camera on, follow these steps:

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Gmail**  .  
The **Add a Google Account** screen displays.

2. Tap **New** to create a new Google account.

— or —

If you already have a Google account, tap **Existing** to sign in and add the account to your camera.

3. Follow the on-screen instructions to add a Google Account.

---

**Note:** Once you have created a Google account, you only need to sign in.

---




## Retrieving your Google Account Password

A Google account password is required for Google applications. If you misplace or forget your Google Account password, follow these instructions to retrieve it:

1. From your computer, use an Internet browser and navigate to <http://google.com/accounts>.
2. Click on the **Can't access your account?** link.
3. Tap the **I don't know my password** radio button.
4. Enter your Email address and click **Continue**.
5. Follow the password recovery procedure.

## Creating a Samsung Account

An active Samsung account is required to begin accessing applications such as ChatON and AllShare Play. If you didn't create a Samsung Account when you first turned on your camera, follow these steps:

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings**  .
2. Tap **Add account**.
3. Tap  **Samsung account**.
4. Tap **Create new account**.

5. Tap **Terms and conditions** to read them and tap **I accept all the terms above** checkbox.
6. Tap **Privacy policy** and read the policy and tap **Agree**.
7. Enter the required information and tap **Sign up**.
8. At the Welcome screen, tap **Next**.
9. Follow the on-screen instructions to verify your email address and activate your account.



## Section 2: Camera Operation

---

This section describes how to use your Camera and Camcorder to take pictures or shoot videos.

### Camera

This section explains how to use the camera on your camera. You can take photographs and shoot video by using the builtin camera functionality. Your 16 megapixel camera produces photos in JPEG format. Opening the Battery Compartment

---

**Important!** Do not take photos of people without their permission.  
Do not take photos in places where cameras are not allowed.  
Do not take photos in places where you may interfere with another person's privacy.

---

### Using the Camera


#### Taking Photos

Taking pictures with your device's built-in camera is as simple as choosing a subject, pointing the camera, then pressing the camera key.


---

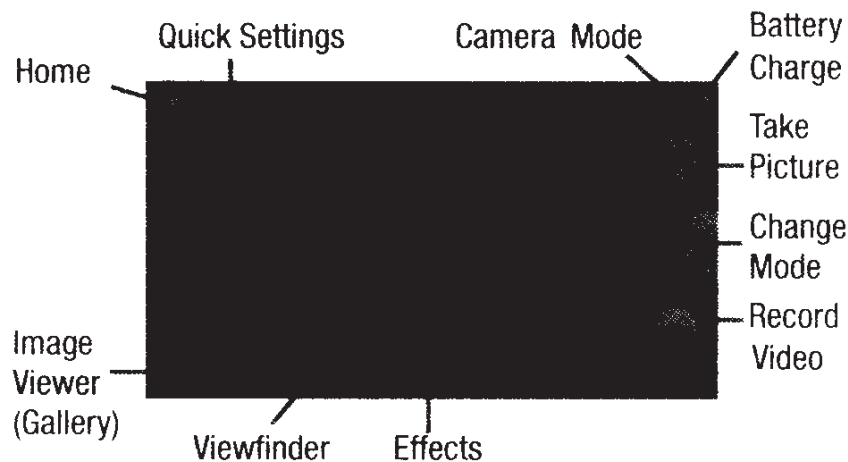
**Note:** When taking a photo in direct sunlight or in bright conditions, shadows may appear on the photo.

---

1. From any Home screen, tap **Camera**  to activate the camera mode.
2. Using the main display screen as a viewfinder, adjust the image by aiming the camera at the subject.
3. Before you take a picture, use the Zoom button to zoom in or out. You can magnify the picture up to x21 (2100 percent).
4. If desired, before taking the photo, you can tap on-screen icons to access various camera options and settings.
5. You can also tap the screen to move the focus to the area you touch.



6. Press the Shutter button (  ) until the shutter sounds. (You can also press the on-screen Camera icon). The picture is automatically stored within your designated storage location. For more information, refer to “Camera and Camcorder Settings” on page 18.



7. While viewing a picture, after you have taken it, pinch the screen outwards to zoom in or pinch the screen inwards to zoom out.

You can magnify the picture up to x21.

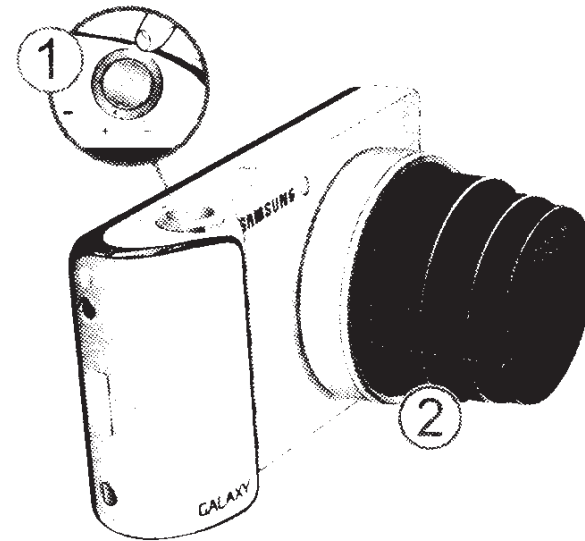
8. Press  to return to the viewfinder.

## Zoom Feature

By using the Zoom button located on the side of the shutter button, you can zoom up to 21 times (X21=2100%).

### To Zoom In:

Move the Zoom button in a clockwise direction so that the red dot lines up with the + symbol as shown in figure (1). The Lens will move out (2).




### To Zoom Out:

Move the Zoom button in a counter-clockwise direction so that the red dot lines up with the - symbol as shown in figure (1). The Lens will move back in.

## Camera Modes


There are three camera modes that you can use depending on the conditions and your experience: Auto, Smart, and Expert.

1. From the camera viewfinder, tap  to change the mode to one of the following:


- **Auto:** Use this to take photos with scene modes selected automatically by the camera. The camera determines the ideal mode for the photo.
- **Smart:** Use this to take photos with a low level of manual adjustment.
  - **Beauty face:** Use this to take photos with lightened faces for gentler images.
  - **Best photo:** Use this to take multiple photos in a short time, and then choose the best photos among them. Press the Shutter button to take multiple photos. When Gallery opens, tap and hold thumbnails of photos to save, and then tap Done.
  - **Continuous shot:** Use this option to take 20 continuous pictures. Hold the shutter button down and hold the camera steady.

- **Best face:** Use this to take multiple group shots at the same time and combine them to create the best possible image. Press the Shutter button to take multiple photos. When Gallery opens, tap the yellow frame on each face, and choose the best individual face for the subject. After choosing a pose for each individual, tap Done to merge the images into a single photo, and tap Save.
- **Landscape:** Use this mode to take landscape pictures that have the blues and greens emphasized.
- **Dawn:** Use this mode to take pictures that have the blues emphasized.
- **Snow:** Use this mode to take pictures that have the whites and emphasized.
- **Macro:** Use this to take photos of very close subjects.
- **Food:** Use this mode to take pictures of food to emphasize the vivid colors.
- **Party/Indoor:** Use this mode to take pictures activities without bulurring.
- **Action freeze:** Use this to take photos of subject moving at high speed

- **Rich tone:** Use this to take photos with richer colours and contrasts.
- **Panorama:** Use this to take wide panoramic photos. Press the Shutter button to take a photo, and then move the camera in any direction. When the blue frame aligns with the preview screen, the camera automatically takes another shot in the panoramic sequence. To stop shooting, press the Shutter button again.
- **Waterfall:** Use this to take photos of waterfalls.
- **Silhouette:** Use this to take photos of dark shapes against a light background.
- **Sunset:** Use this to take photos of the sunset.
- **Night:** Use this to take photos in low-light conditions, without using the flash. Press the Shutter button to take multiple photos. Photos are automatically merged into a single photo.
- **Fireworks:** Use this to take photos of fireworks.
- **Light trace:** Use this to take photos of the light trailing in lowlight conditions.
- **Expert:** Use this to take photos with manual adjustment of ISO sensitivity, exposure value, aperture value, and the shutter speed.

-  : Use this to manually adjust camcorder settings, such as exposure value.
- **M:** Use this to manually adjust camera settings, such as the aperture or shutter speed.
- **P:** Use this to take manually set ISO sensitivity or exposure value to take photos. The shutter speed and aperture are set automatically.
- **A:** Use this to manually set the aperture value to take photos. Shutter speed is set automatically.
- **S:** Use this to manually set the shutter speed to take photos. Aperture is set automatically.

## Quick Settings

Tap  at the top of the display to quickly change Camera settings. Not all of the following options are available in both still camera and video camera modes. The available options vary by mode.



Activate or deactivate the voice control to take photos.



Activate or deactivate the flash.



Use this to set delayed-time shots.



Select a resolution for videos.



Activate or deactivate the sharing options.




Configure Camera settings.



Hide Quick settings.

## Camera and Camcorder Settings

This section describes the different settings that you can configure on your camera. Not all of the following options are available in both still camera and video camera modes. The available options vary by mode.

1. From the viewfinder, tap → Settings .
2. The follow settings are located under the Camera, Camcorder, Share, and General tabs. The settings that are displayed will depend on what camera mode you are in.

### Camera:

- **Photo Size:** Select a resolution for photos. Use higher resolution for higher quality. Higher resolution photos take up more memory.

- **Flash:** Activate or deactivate the flash.
- **Timer:** Use this for delayed-time shots. You can set the timer to Off, 2 sec, 5 sec, or 10 sec.
- **Detection display:** In Auto mode, display scenes that are automatically detected on the screen when half-pressing the Shutter button.

### Camcorder:

- **WB (light source):** Select an appropriate white balance, so images have a true-to-life colour range. The settings are designed for specific lighting situations. These settings are similar to the heat range for white-balance exposure in professional cameras.
- **Timer:** Use this for delayed-time shots. You can set the timer to Off, 2 sec, 5 sec, or 10 sec.
- **Movie size:** Select a resolution for videos. Use higher resolution for higher quality. Higher resolution videos take up more memory.
- **Metering:** Select a metering method. This determines how light values are calculated. Center Weighted measures background light in the centre of the scene. Spot focuses on an individual location. Multi averages the entire scene.

- **OIS (anti-shake):** Activate or deactivate Optical Image Stabilisation. OIS helps focus when the camera is moving.
- **Smart scene:** Use this for taking videos with a scene mode selected automatically by the camera.
- **Sound:** Use this option for enabling or disabling the zoom sound. You can also mute all sounds.

#### Share:

- **Share shot:** Send a photo directly to another device via Wi-Fi Direct.
- **Buddy photo share:** Set the device to recognise a person's face that you have tagged in a photo and send it to that person.  
Face recognition may fail depending on the face angle, face size, skin colour, facial expression, light conditions, or accessories the subject is wearing.
- **ChatON photo share:** Set to share pictures with your ChatON buddies.
- **Remote viewfinder:** Set to control the camera with your mobile device.

#### General:

- **AF/shutter Sound:** Activate or deactivate shutter sounds.
- **Beep:** Activate or deactivate beep sounds.

- **Description:** Describes the picture or video.
- **Guidelines:** Display viewfinder guides to help composition when selecting subjects.
- **Display brightness:** Set the brightness of the screen.
- **Auto screen off:** Set the screen timeout time. Choose from Off, 30 seconds, 1 minute, or 2 minutes.
- **Review:** Set this option if you want to view each picture after you take it. Select a time value
- **Date/time imprint:** Attaches the Date and Time.
- **GPS tag:** Attach a GPS location tag to the photo. To improve GPS signals, avoid shooting in locations where the signal may be obstructed, such as between buildings or in low-lying areas, or in poor weather conditions. Your location may appear on your photos when you upload them to the Internet. To avoid this, deactivate the GPS tag setting.
- **Voice control:** Activate or deactivate the voice control to take photos.
- **AF lamp:** Use this to activate the AF-assist light in low-light conditions.

- **Power-on mode:** This setting allows you to set the camera mode that the camera will be in when you power-up. Select Auto mode or Last mode.
- **Storage:** Select the memory location for storage.
- **Reset:** Reset the camera settings.

### **Viewing your Pictures**

After you take a photo, you can access various options from the Image Viewer. The Image Viewer uses your Gallery. For more information, refer to “Gallery” on page 63.

### **Using the Camcorder**

In addition to taking photos, the camera also doubles as a camcorder that also allows you to record, view, and send videos.

---

**Note:** The camera may not be able to properly record videos to a memory card with a slow transfer speed.







---

### **Shooting Video**


**Tip:** When shooting video in direct sunlight or in bright conditions, it is recommended that you provide your

subject with sufficient light by having the light source behind you.

---

1. From the main Home screen, tap Camera  to activate the camera mode.
2. Using the camera's main display screen as a viewfinder, adjust the image by aiming the camcorder at the subject.
3. Before you take a video, use the Zoom button to zoom in or out. You can magnify the video up to x21 (2100 percent).
4. Tap the Video key  to begin shooting video. The red light will blink while recording.
5. You can tap the screen to move the focus to the area you touch.
6. By pressing  or  you can capture a photo or video.
7. Tap the Pause key  to stop the recording and save the video file to your Camera folder.
8. Tap the Stop key  to stop the recording and save the video file to your Camera folder.



9. Once the file has been saved, tap the image viewer, then tap  to play your video.

10. Press  to return to the viewer.

### ***Viewing your Videos***

After you take a video, you can access various options from the Image Viewer. The Image Viewer uses your Gallery and the Video Player. For more information, refer to “*Gallery*” on page 63. Also, see “*Video Player*” on page 62.

## Section 3: Understanding Your Camera

---

This section outlines some key features of your camera and describes the screen and the icons that appear when the camera is in use. It also shows how to navigate the camera and provides information on using a memory card.

### Features of Your Camera

The Samsung Galaxy Camera is the optimum device for the new era in communication where consumers want to share their moments visually instead verbally. Instead of sending text messages, emails, instant messages or text social networking posts, consumers want to share images of their daily moments in unique ways.

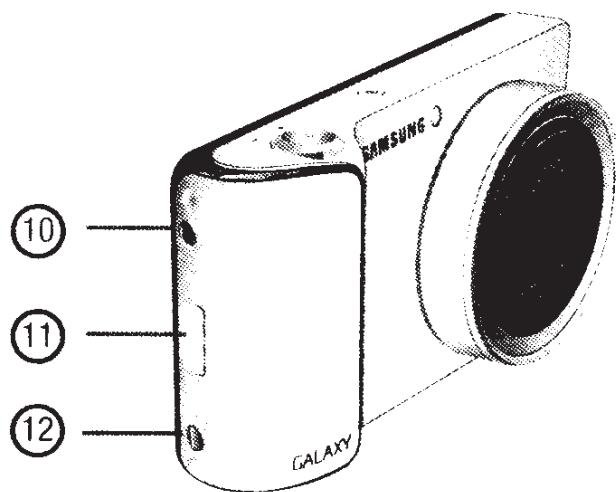
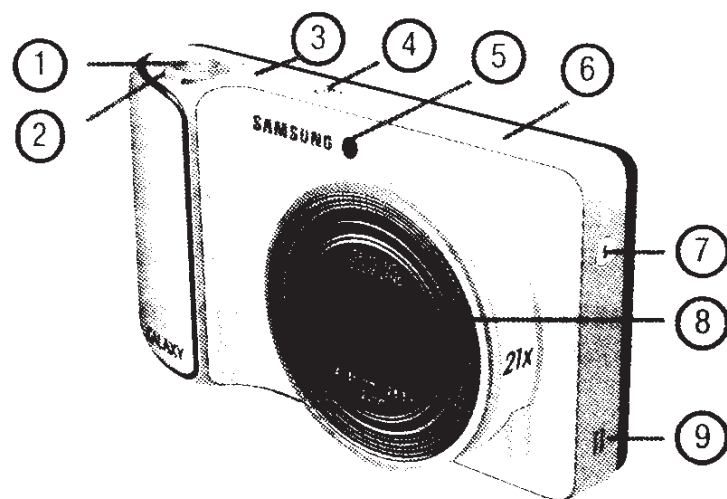
The following list outlines a few of the features included in your camera.

- 16 Megapixel BIS CMOS Sensor with Optical Image Stabilization
- 21x Zoom with 23mm wide angle lens
- 4G network with 1.4 gigahertz quad-core processor
- Android v 4.1.1, Jelly Bean Platform
- Brilliant 4.8" HD Super Clear Touch screen display

- AllShare™ Play to share your media content across DLNA certified devices
- Photo Wizard and Movie Wizard applications
- Ready access to the Internet
- Built-in Bluetooth and advanced Wi-Fi® technology
- HSDPA 21 mbps high speed download capability
- Up to 64 GB expandable memory slot
- 16 GB memory and 2 GB RAM
- Corporate and Personal Email
- Sync and update social network applications
- Over 450,000 Apps available to download via Google Play Store™
- Full Integration of Google Mobile™ Services (Gmail, YouTube, Google Maps, Google Voice Search)



## Your Camera at a Glance

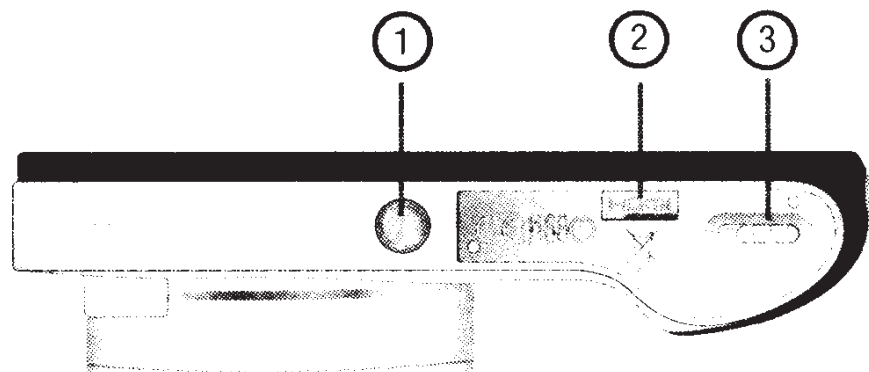


1. **Shutter button:** press to take pictures.
2. **Zoom button:** allows you to zoom in and out.
3. **Microphone:** used for noise cancellation and stereo recording.
4. **Power/Lock key:** (  ) lets you power your camera on and off. Also allows you to lock or unlock the touch screen. For more information on locking your camera, see “Locking and Unlocking the Camera” on page 36.
5. **AF Assist light:** used for taking pictures in low-light conditions.
6. **Flash:** allows you to take pictures when there is not adequate lighting.
7. **Flash release:** press this button to raise the flash.
8. **Lens:** camera lens that is extended when taking pictures.
9. **External speaker:** allows you to hear notifications and music.
10. **3.5 Headset jack:** allows you to attach earphones or other accessories.

**11. Power/Accessory Interface connector:** allows you to connect a Travel Charger or other optional accessories such as a USB/data cable.

**12. Lanyard port:** allows you to attach a lanyard or handstrap to the camera.

### Bottom View of Your Camera



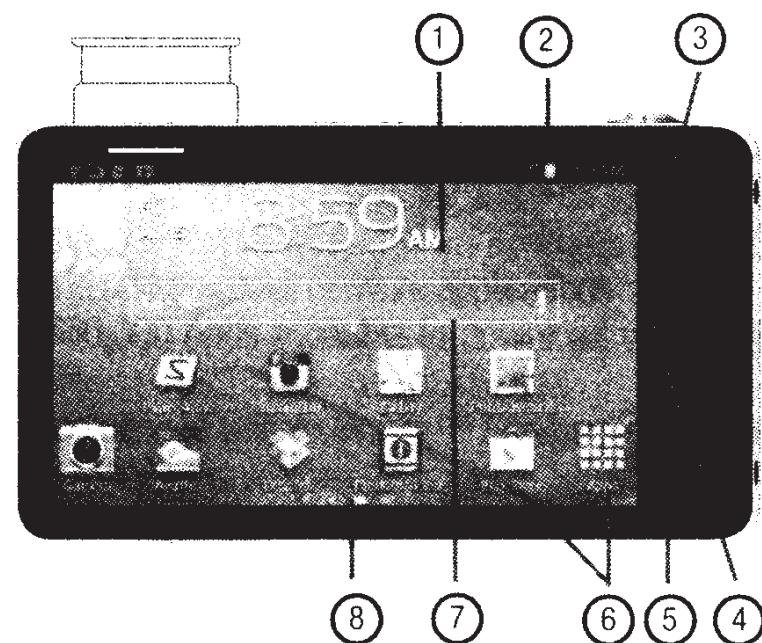
1. Tripod mount: allows you to attach your camera to a tripod (not included).

2. HDMI port: allows you to connect your camera to HDMI devices.

3. Battery cover release: slide to the left to access your battery, SIM card, and memory card.

### Display Layout

Your display screen provides a wealth of information about the camera's status and options, as well as providing access to application icons.





1. **Widgets:** you can place shortcuts to your favorite widgets on each Home screen. The Weather widget appears on the main Home screen by default.

2. **Indicator icons:** shows the information needed to operate your camera, such as the received signal strength, battery level, time, unread Emails, etc.
3. **Back key:** allows you step backwards when navigating a menu or web page.
4. **Home key:** allows you to return to the main Home screen from any Home screen or menu. Press and hold to display Task Manager.
5. **Menu key:** allows you to access sub-menus with additional options for different features and applications such as Home screen, Contacts, Messaging, and Browser.
6. **Application icons:** you can place shortcuts to your favorite applications on the Home screen. The Camera and Apps icons appear on all home pages and are referred to as Primary Shortcuts.
7. **Google Quick Search bar:** a shortcut to Google Search that allows you to search for items on the internet.
8. **Home screen indicator:** shows which Home screen is presently displayed.

## **Primary Shortcuts**

There are two non-movable Application Shortcuts that appear at the bottom of all Home screens. The default shortcuts are:

- **Camera**  for quick access to our camera.
  - **Apps**  for accessing the applications on your camera.
- For more information, refer to “Adding and Removing Primary Shortcuts” on page 39.

## **Indicator Icons**

This list identifies the symbols you’ll see on your camera’s display and Indicator area:



Indicates that the Airplane Mode is active. You cannot send or receive any messages or access online information.



Displays when your camera is in Blocking mode.



Displays when there is a system error or alert.



Displays your battery charge level. Icon shown is fully charged.



Displays when your battery is charging. Also displays battery charge level.



Device Power Very Low – Shows your current battery only has between 5 and 15 percent power remaining.



Device Power Critical – Shows your current battery only has less than 5 percent power remaining and will immediately shutdown.



Displays when your camera is downloading or has downloaded a file. It will blink green when it is installing.



Displays when the an outbound file transfer is in progress.



Displays when a Play Store download has completed.



Displays when updates are available for download.



Displays when the camera is connected to a computer via a supported USB cable connection.



Displays when Email is received.



Displays when the time and date for a Calendar Event has arrived. For more information, refer to “*Calendar*” on page 116.



Displays when you set an alarm to ring at a specified time. For more information, refer to “*Alarm*” on page 118.



Displays when the Sound profile is set to Mute.



Displays when the Sound profile is set to Vibrate.



Displays when Bluetooth is activated.



Displays when a Bluetooth device has been paired with the camera.



Displays when Wi-Fi is connected, active, and communicating with a Wireless Access Point (WAP).



Displays when Wi-Fi is active but there is a communication issue with the target Wireless Access Point (WAP).



Displays when Wi-Fi Direct is active and your camera is connected to another device.



Displays when your camera is connected to a Digital Living Network Alliance (DLNA) certified device using the AllShare Play application.



Displays when GPS is active and acquiring a signal.



Displays when data synchronization and application sync is active and synchronization is in progress for Gmail, Calendar, and Contacts.



Displays when a Software update is available for download.



Displays when your device is connected being used to control streaming media and is connected to a Digital Living Network Alliance (DLNA) certified device using the AllShare Play application.



Displays when the keypad is active.



For more details on configuring your camera's settings, see *"Changing Your Settings"* on page 71.

### **Application Icons**

The Apps menu provides quick access to the items you use most frequently.

The following table contains a description of each application. If the application is already described in another section of this user manual, then a cross reference to that particular section is provided.

For information on navigating through the Apps icons, see *"Navigating Through the Application Menus"* on page 36.

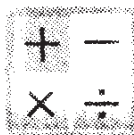
1. From the Home screen, tap , then tap one of the application icons.
2. Follow the on-screen instructions.
3. To return to the main Home screen, tap .

The following applications are available:





**AllShare Play:** AllShare Play allows your camera to stream photos, music and videos from its memory to other Digital Living Network Alliance (DLNA) certified devices. Your camera can also play digital content streamed from other DLNA certified devices. For more information, refer to “*AllShare Play*” on page 112.



**Calculator:** Using this feature you can use the camera as a calculator. The calculator provides the basic arithmetic functions; addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division. You can also use this as a scientific calculator. For more information, refer to “*Calculator*” on page 116.



**Calendar:** With the Calendar application, you can consult the calendar by day, week, month, year, create events, and set an alarm to act as a reminder, if necessary. For more information, refer to “*Calendar*” on page 116.



**Camera:** Use your 16.0 megapixel camera feature to produce photos and videos. For more information, refer to “*Camera Operation*” on page 14.



**ChatON:** With the ChatON application, you can interact with friends and family with text, images, hand-written notes and video shared instantly. You can also chat in groups. For more information, refer to “*ChatON*” on page 118.



**Chrome:** The Google Chrome app allows you to use the Google Chrome web browser on your camera. For more information, refer to “*Chrome*” on page 118.



**Clock:** The Clock application allows you to access alarms, view the World Clock, set a stopwatch, use a timer, and setup a Desk Clock. For more information, refer to “*Clock*” on page 118.



**Contacts:** You can manage your daily contacts by storing their name and number in your Address Book. Address Book entries can be sorted by name, entry, or group.



**Downloads:** The Downloads application allows you to manage all of your downloads from the Play Store and the Browser. For more information, refer to “*Downloads*” on page 121.



**Dropbox:** Dropbox provides access to your personal computer files directly from your device.



**Email:** Email enables you to review and create email using various email services. You can also receive text message alerts when you receive an important email.

For more information, refer to “Using Email” on page 66.



**Gallery:** The Gallery is where you view photos and play back videos. For photos, you can also perform basic editing tasks, view a slideshow, set photos as wallpaper or contact image, and share as a picture message. For more information, refer to “Gallery” on page 63.



**Game Hub:** Use this application to access social and premium games. Join Game Hub to enjoy free games with your friends.



**Gmail:** Gmail is a web-based email service. Gmail is configured when you first set up your device. Depending on your synchronization settings, Gmail can automatically synchronize with your Gmail account on the web. For more information, refer to “Using Gmail” on page 68.



**Google:** The Google Search application is the same onscreen Internet search engine that is on the Google Search Bar on your main Home screen. For more information, see “Google Search Bar” on page 33.



**Google Settings:** Google Settings allows you to quickly access the Google applications and their settings.



**Google +:** Google+ makes messaging and sharing with your friends a lot easier. You can set up Circles of friends, visit the Stream to get updates from your Circles, use Messenger for fast messaging with everyone in your Circles, or use Instant Upload to automatically upload videos and photos to your own private album on Google+. For more information, refer to “Google +” on page 69.



**Group Play:** Group Cast allows you to share pictures, music, and documents in real-time with your friends. For more information, refer to “*Group Play*” on page 124.



**Help:** The Help app provides additional in-device information on Learning the basics, Changing important settings, Use Key applications, and Help settings.



**Instagram:** Instagram is a fun way to share your life with friends through pictures. Snap a photo with your camera, then choose a filter to transform the image into a great picture. For more information, refer to “*Instagram*” on page 65.



**Internet:** Open the web browser to start surfing the web. The browser is fully optimized and comes with advanced functionality to enhance the Internet browsing feature on your camera. For more information, refer to “*Internet*” on page 97.



**Local:** Local is an application that uses Google Maps and your location to help you find destinations, such as restaurants, bars, hotels, attractions, ATMs, and gas stations.



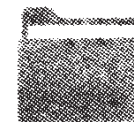
**Maps:** Depending on your location, you can view basic, custom, and satellite maps and local business information, including locations, contact information, and driving directions. You can also post public messages about a location and track your friends. For more information, refer to “*Maps*” on page 125.



**Messenger:** Messenger allows you to bring groups of friends together into a simple group conversation. When you get a new conversation in Messenger, Google+ sends an update to your camera. For more information, refer to “*Messenger*” on page 70.



**Music Player:** Music Player allows you to play music files that you have stored on your camera and memory card. You can also create playlists. For more information, refer to “*Music Player*” on page 59.



**My Files:** My Files allows you to manage your sounds, images, videos, bluetooth files, Android files, and other memory card data in one convenient location. For more information, refer to “*My Files*” on page 126.





**Navigation:** Navigation is an internet-connected GPS navigation system with voice guidance. You can type or speak your destination. For more information, refer to “*Navigation*” on page 127.



**Paper Artist:** Provides access to an in-device graphics program. For more information, refer to “*Paper Artist*” on page 129.



**Photo Wizard:** Allows you to edit your photos. For more information, refer to “*Photo Wizard*” on page 64.



**Play Books:** With Google Play Books, you can find more than 3 million free e-books and hundreds of thousands more to buy in the eBookstore. For more information, refer to “*Play Books*” on page 129.



**Play Magazines:** With Google Play Magazines, you can subscribe to your favorite magazines and have them available to read on your camera at any time or any place. For more information, refer to “*Play Magazines*” on page 130.



**Play Movies & TV:** With Google Play Movies & TV, you can rent thousands of different movies and television shows. You can watch instantly, or download your movie or show for offline viewing at a later time. For more information, refer to “*Play Movies & TV*” on page 63.



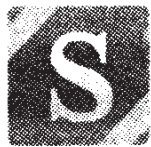
**Play Music:** With the Music application, while online, you can play music that you have added to your music file as well as any music you copied from your PC. While offline, you can listen to music you have copied from your PC. For more information, refer to “*Google Play Music*” on page 62.



**Play Store:** The Play Store provides access to downloadable applications and games to install on your camera. For more information, refer to “*Play Store*” on page 130.



**S Memo:** This application recommends popular applications when connected to a Wi-Fi network. All recommended applications are guaranteed to be compatible with your device. For more information, refer to “*S Suggest*” on page 133.



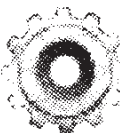
**S Suggest:** Provides on-screen recommendations for applications that are specifically supported and made for use on your device. For more information, see “*S Suggest*” on page 133.



**S Voice:** With the S Voice application you can use your voice to perform operations that you would normally have to do by hand such as texting a message, playing music, etc. For more information, refer to “*S Voice*” on page 133.



**Samsung Apps:** Allows you to easily download an abundance of applications to your device. This includes games, news, reference, social networking, navigation, and more. For more information, see “*Samsung Apps*” on page 134.



**Settings:** This icon navigates to the settings for your device. It includes such settings as: display, security, memory, and any extra settings associated with your camera. For more information, refer to “*Changing Your Settings*” on page 71.



**Talk:** Google Talk is a free Windows and web-based application for instant messaging offered by Google. Conversation logs are automatically saved to a Chats area in your Gmail account. This allows you to search a chat log and store them in your Gmail accounts. For more information, refer to “*Google Talk*” on page 69.



**Video Editor:** Allows you to edit your videos. For more information, refer to “*Video Editor*” on page 64.



**Video Player:** The Video Player application plays video files stored on your microSD card. For more information, refer to “*Video Player*” on page 62.



**Voice Search:** The Google Voice Search application allows you to search the web using only your voice. For more information, refer to “*Voice Search*” on page 134.



**Weather:** The Weather application allows you to enable the current location to provide accurate weather conditions.



**YouTube:** YouTube is a video sharing website on which users can upload and share videos, and view them in MPEG-4 format. For more information, refer to “*YouTube*” on page 135.

---

**Tip:** To open applications quickly, add the icons of frequently used applications to the Home screen or to the folders you created. For details, see “*Customizing Your Home Screen*” on page 38.


---

### Google Search Bar

The Google Search Bar provides you an on-screen Internet search engine powered by Google™.

1. From the main home screen, tap the Google Search bar



2. Use the on-screen keypad to enter the item you want to search for, then tap .


3. Tap  to use Google Voice Search. For more information, refer to “*Google voice typing settings*” on page 85.

### Menu Navigation


You can tailor the camera’s range of functions to fit your needs using both menus and widgets. Menus, sub-menus, and features can be accessed by scrolling through the available on-screen menus. Your camera originally has four home screens but you can expand up to seven home screens.

### Command Keys


#### Menu Key

Press  **Menu** to display a context-sensitive menu of options for the current screen or feature.

#### Home Key

Press  **Home** to display the main Home screen. Press and hold to display recently used apps and access the Task manager.

#### Back Key

Press  **Back** to return to the previous screen, option or step.

### Terms used in this user manual

#### Tap

Lightly touch items to select or launch them. For example:

- Tap the on screen keyboard to enter characters or text.

- Tap a menu item to select it.
- Tap an application's icon to launch the application.

### **Touch and Hold**

Activate on-screen items by a touch and hold gesture. For example:

- Touch and hold a widget on the home screen to move it.
- Touch and hold on a field to display a pop-up menu of options.

### **Swipe and Palm Swipe**

To swipe, lightly drag your finger vertically or horizontally across the screen. Use swipe when:

- Unlocking the screen
- Scrolling through the Home screen or a menu

To palm swipe, swipe the side of your hand horizontally across the screen. Use palm swipe when:

- Capturing the screen

### **Panning**



To pan, touch and hold a selected icon, then move the device to the left or right to reposition it to another page. You must first activate Motion on your device. Use panning to:

- Move icons on your Home screens or Application Menus to another page.

## **Using Gestures**

By activating the various gesture features within the Motion Settings menu, you can access a variety of time saving functions.

### **To activate motion:**

1. From the Home screen, press  and then tap **Settings → Motion**.
2. Tap the ON/OFF icon  located at the top of the screen to activate motion.
3. Tap the checkboxes located to the right of each motion option to activate the motions you wish. A checkmark will appear.

The following is a description of the available gestures:

### **Motion**

- **Pan to move icon:** Once enabled, touch and hold a desired application shortcut icon or widget on the screen. Once detached, move the device left or right to migrate it to a new location.

- **Pan to browse images:** Once enabled, touch and hold a desired on-screen image to pan around it. Move the device left or right to pan vertically or up and down to pan horizontally around the large on-screen image.

### Sensitivity settings and tutorial

- **Sensitivity settings:** Set the sensitivity for each motion recognition.
  - **Gyroscope calibration:** Allows you to properly calibrate your device's touch screen.
- **Pan to move icon**
  - **Sensitivity:** This setting only displays when the **Pan to move icon option** is enabled. Use the slider to change the speed. Set the speed and choose Test to evaluate the setting, Cancel to return, or OK to save the speed setting.
- **Pan to browse images**
  - **Sensitivity:** This setting only displays when the **Pan to browse images option** is enabled. Use the slider to change the speed. Set the speed and choose Test to evaluate the setting, Cancel to return, or OK to save the speed setting.
- **Learn about motions:** Allows you to see the on-screen Help for the **Pan to move icon** and **Pan to browse images** options.

### Hand motions

- **Palm swipe to capture:** Once enabled, you can capture any on-screen information swiping across the screen. In a single motion, press the side of your hand on the screen and swipe from left to right. The image is then copied to the clipboard.
- **Palm touch to mute/pause:** Once enabled, you can pause any on-screen video or mute any current sound by simply covering the screen with your hand. Once you remove your hand from the screen, the device goes back to normal by either continuing to play the current video or unmuting the current sound.

For more information, refer to “*Motion*” on page 91.

### Hand motion tutorial



- **Learn about hand motions:** Use the Camera on-screen Help to show how to **Palm swipe to capture** and to **Palm touch to mute/pause**.



## ***Locking and Unlocking the Camera***


**Note:** There are several additional ways you can lock your screen. For more information, refer to “Lock Screen Settings” on page 81.

To unlock your camera:

1. Press the lock button  located on the upper right side of your camera.
2. The lock screen will display with  displayed at the bottom of the screen.
3. Swipe the touch screen in any direction.  
The Home screen will display.

## ***Home Screen Overview***

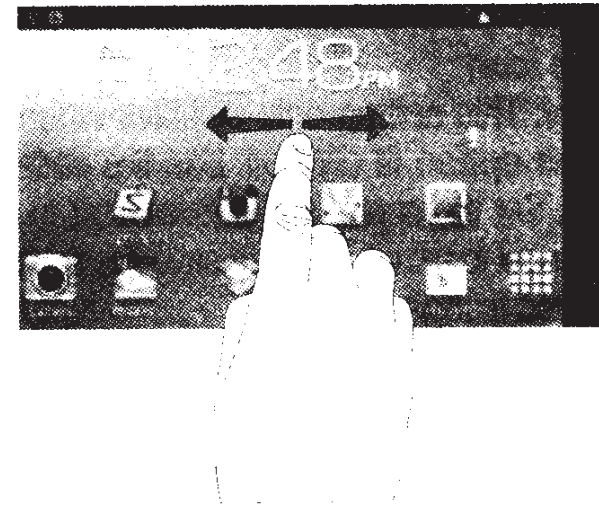
The main home screen is the starting point for many applications and functions, and it allows you to add items like application icons, shortcuts, folders, or Google widgets to give you instant access to information and applications.

This is the default page and accessible from any menu by pressing .

## ***Navigating Through the Home Screens***


Your camera originally has three home screens but you can expand up to seven home screens. If you like, you can place different applications on each of the home screens.

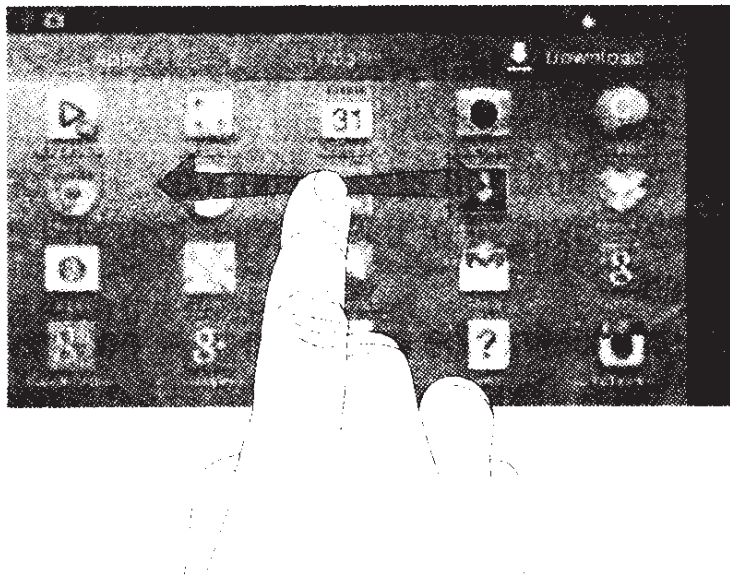
- From the main Home screen, sweep the screen with your finger in either direction. The main Home Screen is located in the middle with a Home screen on each side.



## ***Navigating Through the Application Menus***

Your camera initially has three Application Menus available. Follow these steps to navigate through the Application Menus:

1. At the Home screen, tap . The first Application Menu will be displayed.
2. Sweep the screen left or right to access the other two menus.
3. Tap one of the application icons.



---

**Note:** As you add applications, the number of Application menus that you have available will increase.

---

### *Navigating Using Sub-Menus*

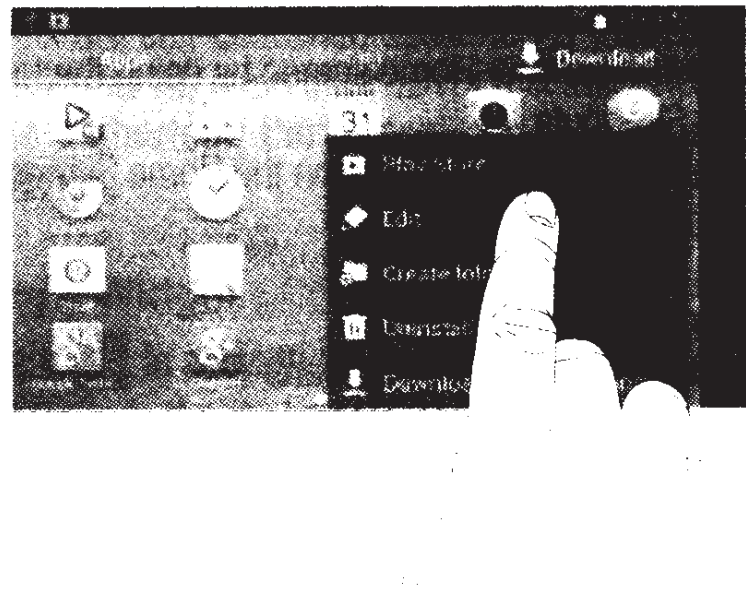
Sub-menus are available when you are at any Home screen or have selected a feature or application such as Camera, Contacts, Messaging, or Internet.

To access a sub-menu:


1. Press .

A sub-menu will appear at the bottom of the screen.

2. Tap an option.



## Accessing Recently-Used Apps

1. Press and hold  from any screen to open the recently-used applications window.
2. Tap an icon to open the selected application.  
— or —  
Tap **Task manager** to go to the Task manager.

## Customizing Your Home Screen

You can customize your Home screen by doing the following:

- Creating Shortcuts
- Adding and Removing Widgets on the Home Screen
- Repositioning Widgets
- Creating Folders
- Changing the Wallpaper
- Adding and Deleting Home Screens

## Creating Shortcuts



Shortcuts are different than the current Home screen Widgets that only launch an application. Shortcuts activate a feature, action, or launch an application.

---


**Note:** To move a shortcut from one screen to another, it must first be deleted from its current screen. Navigate to the new screen, then add the shortcut.

---

## Adding a shortcut from the Apps Menu

1. Press  to activate the main Home screen.
2. Navigate to the desired Home Page.
3. Tap  to display your current applications.
4. Scroll through the list and locate your desired application.
5. Touch and hold the application icon. This creates an immediate shortcut of the selected icon and closes the **Apps** tab.
6. While still holding the on-screen icon, position it on the current page. Once complete, release the screen to lock the new shortcut into its new position on the current screen.

## Adding a shortcut via the Add to Home screen

1. Press  to activate the main Home screen.
2. Navigate to the desired Home Page.
3. Touch and hold on an empty area of the Home screen.



4. Tap **Apps and widgets**, **Folder**, or **Page**.

5. Press and hold a shortcut from the available list and position it on the current screen.

### Deleting a shortcut

1. Press  to activate the main Home screen.

2. Touch and hold the desired shortcut. This unlocks it from its location on the current screen.


3. Drag the icon over the **Remove** icon  and release it. As you place the shortcut into the Trash, both items turn red.


---

**Note:** This action does not delete the shortcut, it just removes it from the current screen.

---

### Adding and Removing Primary Shortcuts

You can change any of your primary shortcuts with the exception of the **Apps**  shortcut.

1. Press  to activate the main Home screen.

2. Touch and hold the primary shortcut you want to replace, then drag it to an empty space on any Home screen.

3. Scroll through the App menu to find the shortcut you want to add as the new primary short cut.

4. Touch and hold the new shortcut, then drag it to the empty space in the row of primary shortcuts.

The new primary shortcut will now appear on all Home screens.

### Adding and Removing Widgets

Widgets are self-contained applications that reside in either your Widgets tab or on the main or extended Home screens. Unlike a shortcut, the Widget appears as an on-screen application.

### Adding a Widget

1. Press  to activate the main Home screen.

2. Navigate to the desired Home Page.


3. Touch and hold on an empty area of the screen.

4. Tap **Apps and Widgets**.

5. Tap the **Widgets** tab at the top of the screen.

6. Press and hold an available Widget to position it on the current screen, then release the Widget.

## Removing a Widget





1. Touch and hold a Widget until you can move it around on the screen.
2. Drag the Widget over the **Remove** icon  and release it. As you place the Widget into the Trash, both items turn red.


---

**Note:** This action does not actually delete the Widget, it just removes it from the current Home screen.

---

## Moving Icons in the Apps Menu





1. Press  to activate the main Home screen.
2. Tap  to display your current applications.
3. Tap the **Apps** tab at the top of the screen if it is not already selected.
4. Press  and tap **View type**.
5. Tap **Customizable grid**. A green circle will appear next to the option.
6. Press  and tap **Edit**.

7. Scroll through the list and locate the icon you wish to move.
8. Touch and drag the icon to the position that you want. To move to a different page, drag the icon to the edge of the page until the page scrolls to the desired page.
9. Tap **Save**.
10. Press  to return to the Home screen.

## Creating Application Folders

You can create application folders to hold similar applications if you wish.

To create a folder follow these steps:

1. Press  to activate the main Home screen.
2. Tap  to display your current applications.
3. Tap the **Apps** tab at the top of the screen if it is not already selected.
4. Press  and tap **Edit**.
5. Touch and hold the first application that you would like to move to a folder.
6. Drag the icon up to the **Create folder**  icon.
7. Enter a folder name and tap **OK**.  
A folder is displayed in the original place of the application icon with the application icon displayed on




top of it. You can now drag other Apps into the folder.

8. To view information on an App, drag the App icon up to the App info  icon to view information on the application.

9. Tap **Save**.

### ***Adding a New Page to the Application Menu***


You can add a new page to your application menu by following these steps:

1. Press  to activate the main Home screen.
2. Tap  to display your current applications.
3. Tap the **Apps** tab at the top of the screen if it is not already selected.
4. Press  and tap **Edit**.
5. Touch and drag an application to the new page that you would like.
6. Tap **Save**.

The app will appear on a new page.

### ***Changing the Wallpaper***

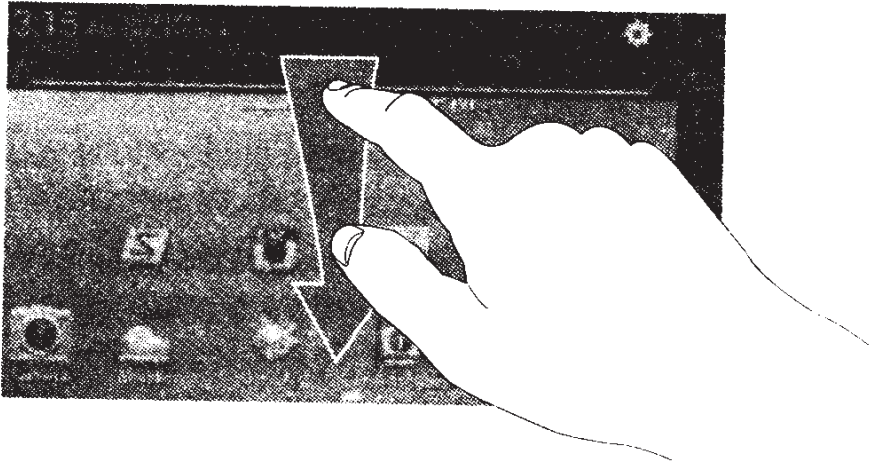
You can change the Wallpaper (background) of your home screens by following these steps:

1. From any Home screen, press  and tap **Set wallpaper**. The **Set wallpaper** window is displayed.
2. Select the location where you would like to change the wallpaper. Tap **Home screen**, **Lock screen**, or **Home and lock screens**.
3. Tap one of the following options:
  - **Gallery**: select a wallpaper from photographs you have taken with your camera.
  - **Live wallpapers**: select an animated wallpaper. This option is not available for the Lock screen option.
  - **Wallpapers**: select from many still-life wallpapers.
4. Select a wallpaper and tap **Set wallpaper**, **Done**, or **Cancel**.

## Notification Bar

The Notification Bar includes a pull-down list to show information about processes that are running, recent notifications, and alerts. To display the Status indicator:

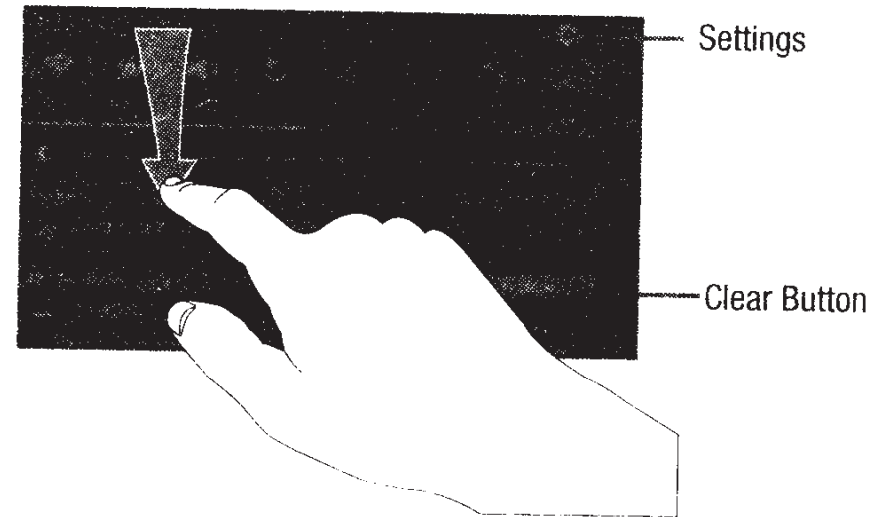
- From any screen, touch and hold the Notification Bar until the pull-down displays, then drag down vertically.



## Clearing Notifications

To clear all notifications from the Notification panel:

1. From the Home screen, touch and hold the Notification Bar until the pull-down displays, then drag down vertically.



2. Tap the Clear button.

The notifications are cleared and the panel closes.

## Accessing Additional Panel Functions

In addition to notifications, this panel also provides quick and ready access to separate device functions. These can be quickly activated or deactivated by tapping them to toggle them on or off.

The following functions can either be activated (green) or deactivated (gray): Wi-Fi, GPS, Sound, Screen rotation, Bluetooth, Blocking mode, Power saving, AllShare Cast, and Sync.

## Memory Card

Your device lets you use a microSD™ (SD) or microSDHC™ card to expand available memory space. This secure digital card enables you to exchange images, music, and data between SD-compatible devices. This section addresses the features and options of your device's SD functionality. The device has a USB SD card mode.


### Mounting the SD Card

To store additional photos, music, videos, and other applications, you must mount (install) the SD card prior to use. Mounting the SD card establishes a USB connection with your computer.

1. Insert the SD card into the external, SD card slot. For more information, refer to *"Installing and Removing the Memory Card"* on page 6.
2. Your SD card is scanned to see the available information on it.

### Unmounting the SD card


Unmounting the SD card prevents corruption and damage to the SD card while removing it from the slot.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Storage**.
2. Scroll to the bottom of the display and tap **Unmount SD card**.
3. Tap **OK**.

For more information, refer to *"Removing the Memory Card"* on page 7.

### SD card Available Memory Status


To view the memory allocation for your external SD card:

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Storage**.
2. The available memory for Device and SD card displays under the **Total space** and **Available space** headings.

### Erasing Files from the SD card

You can erase files from the SD card using the camera.

1. Ensure the SD card is mounted. For more information, refer to *"Mounting the SD Card"* on page 43.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Storage**.
2. Tap **Format SD card**.
3. At the **Format SD card** confirmation prompt, tap **Format SD card**.

---

**Warning!** Performing the next step erases all data stored on the SD card.

---

4. Tap **Delete all** to format or press  to cancel.

## Section 4: Entering Text

This section describes how to select the desired text input method when entering characters. This section also describes the predictive text entry system that reduces the amount of key strokes associated with entering text.

Your camera comes equipped with an orientation detector that can tell if the camera is being held in an upright (Portrait) or sideways (Landscape) orientation. This is useful when entering text.

### Text Input Methods

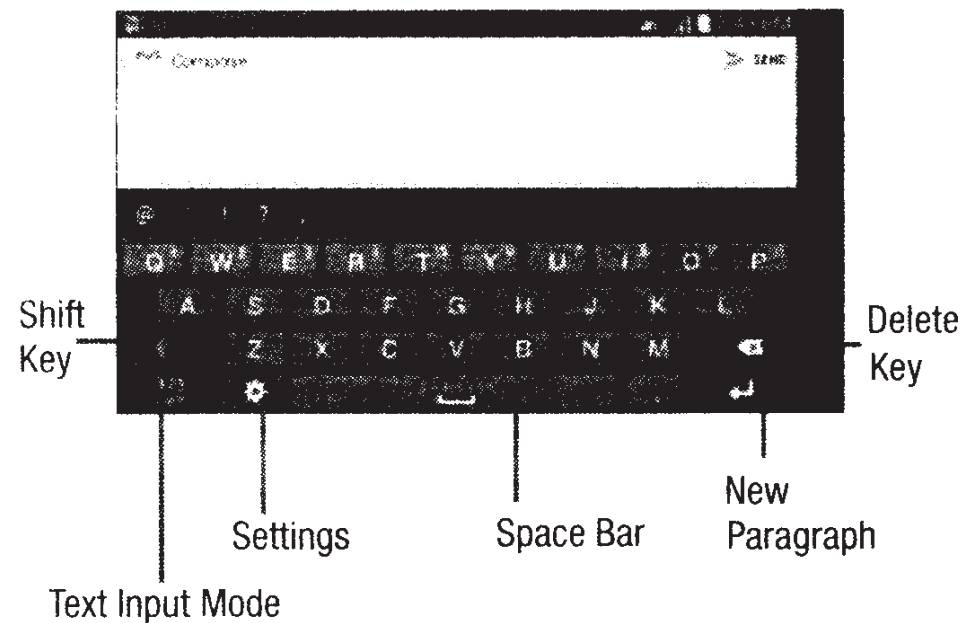
There are two text input methods available:

- **Samsung keyboard (default):** Samsung's on-screen QWERTY keypad that can be used in both portrait and landscape orientation.
- **Google Voice typing:** allows you to enter text by speaking.

To change the input method, see “*Keyboards and Input Methods*” on page 85.

### Entering Text Using the Samsung Keyboard

From a screen where you can enter text, rotate your camera counterclockwise to a Landscape orientation. The on-screen QWERTY keypad will display.





## Changing the Text Input Mode - Keypad


There are two main keypad layout keys that will change the on-screen keys within the QWERTY keypad.

The available Text Input modes are: **Sym** and **Abc**.

**123**  
**Sym**

**Symbol/Numeric Mode:** activates the number, symbol, and emoticon keys.

**ABC**

**ABC Mode:** activates the default alphabet keys. Can also be set to **Abc** or **abc** by using the shift (  ) key.

---

**Note:** When in **Abc** mode, the **Sym** button will appear. When in **Sym** mode, the **Abc/ABC/abc** button will appear.

---

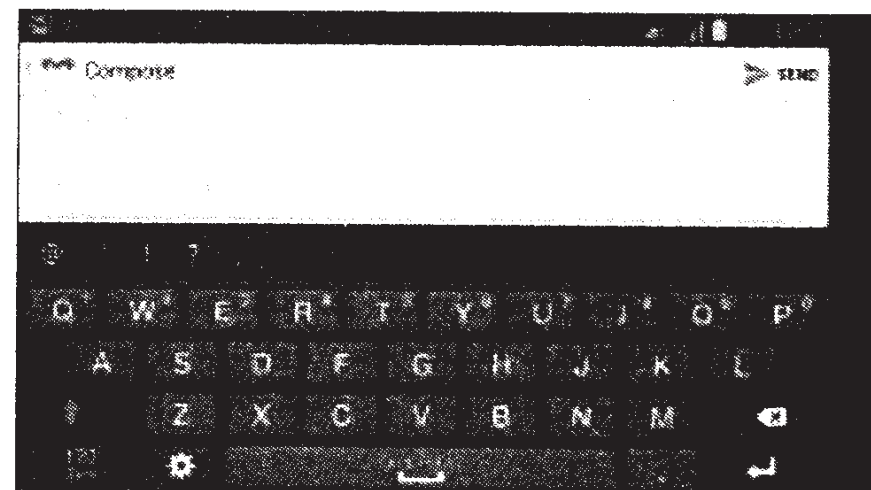
## Using ABC Mode






1. If desired, rotate your camera counterclockwise to a Landscape orientation.

---

**Note:** The keyboard display will differ slightly depending on the application used to enter text.

---



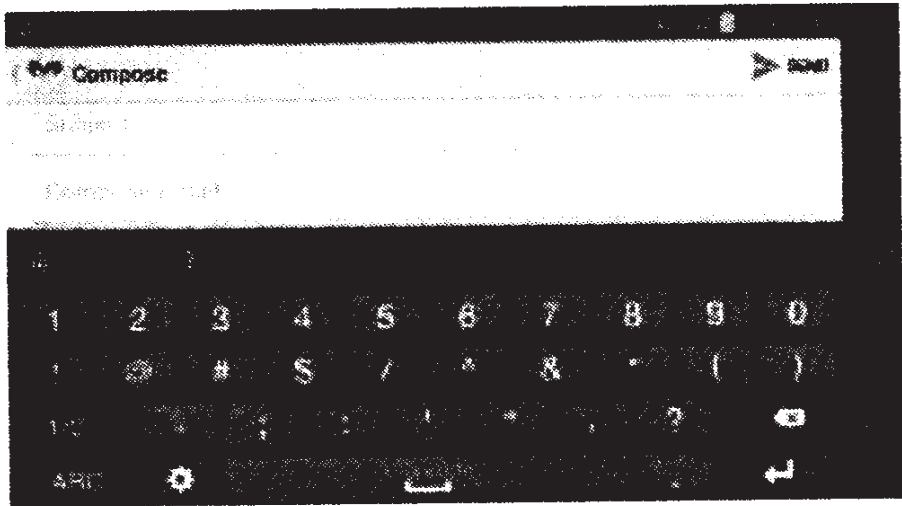
2. At the keyboard display, tap the desired alphabetic characters.
3. The screen initially opens in ABC mode. After typing the first letter, the shift key (  ) will change to  and following letters will be lowercase.
4. Tap  to input another upper-case letter or tap  twice to switch to ABC mode. The shift key will change to  in ABC mode. All following letters will be uppercase until you tap the shift key again.



# Using Symbol/Numeric Mode

Use Symbol/Numeric Mode to add numbers, symbols, or emoticons.

- 1. Rotate your camera counterclockwise to a Landscape orientation.
- 2. Tap **123 Sym** at the bottom of the screen. The following screen displays:



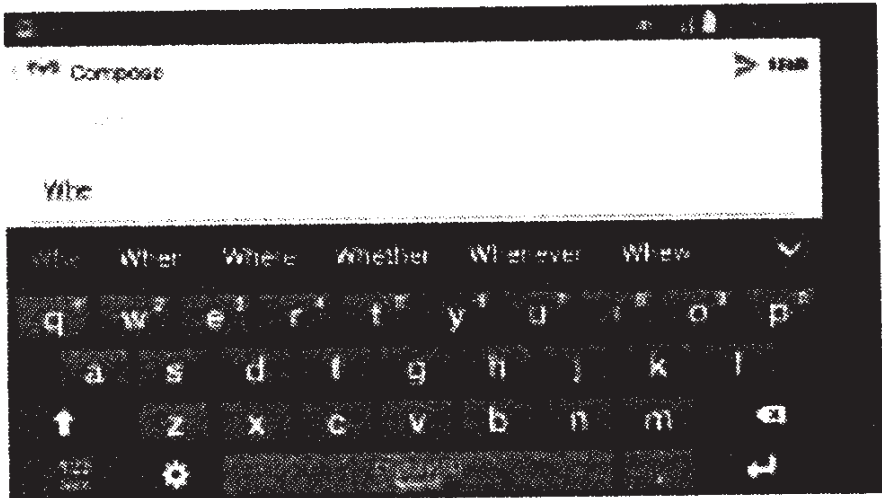
- 3. Tap the desired number, symbol, or emoticon characters.
- 4. Tap the **1/3** button to access additional symbols.
- 5. Tap **ABC** to return to Abc mode.


# Predictive Text

By using the Predictive Text option, you can have next-letter prediction and regional error correction, which compensates for pressing the wrong keys on the QWERTY keyboard.

Predictive text is turned on by default.

- 1. At the keyboard, tap the **⚙** icon.
- 2. Tap the ON/OFF slider, located to the right of the **Predictive text** field, to **ON**.
- 3. In the text portion of the message screen, begin typing a word. A list of word options is displayed. Tap one of the words to replace the word that has already been typed or scroll the line of words to the left for more word choices.



4. Continue typing your message. Send the message or press  for more options. For more information, refer to “Using Email” on page 66.

---

**Note:** You can also use Predictive Text mode in the portrait orientation.

---

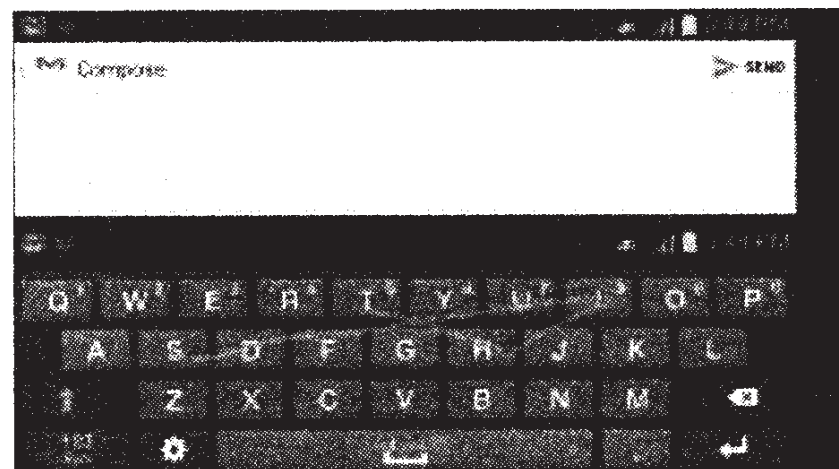
## Samsung Keyboard Settings

For information on how you can configure your Samsung keyboard settings, see “Samsung Keyboard settings” on page 86.

## Entering Text Using Continuous Input

You can enter text simply by using your finger to handwrite letters on your screen. The following example shows how to enter the word “This”. Put your finger down on the “T”, and without lifting, glide it to the “h”, then to the “i” then over to the “s”.

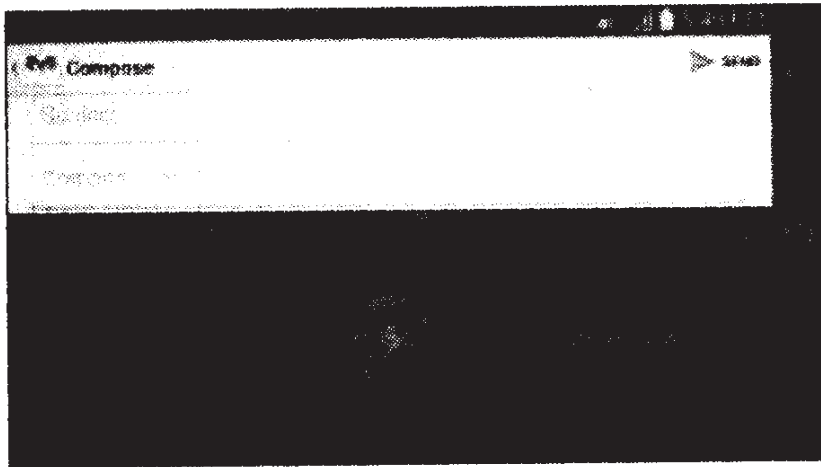
1. At the keyboard, tap the  icon.
2. Tap the **T9 Trace** checkbox to create a checkmark and activate the feature.



## Using the Google Voice Typing Feature

You can use your voice to enter text using the Google Voice typing feature.

1. From the keypad, touch the top of the screen and drag it down to display your notification panel.
2. Tap **Choose input method**.
3. Tap **Google voice typing**.



4. At the Speak now prompt, speak clearly and distinctly into the microphone.
5. If the red microphone turns gray, then the feature has timed out and you should tap the microphone icon to start again.  
The text is displayed in the message as you are speaking.

---

**Note:** The feature works best when you break your message down into smaller segments.

---

## Section 5: Contacts and Your Address Book

This section allows you to manage your contacts by storing their name and information in your Address Book.

### View your Address Book




To view your Address Book:

- From the Home screen, tap  → **Contacts** .  
Your Address Book is displayed with all of your contacts.

### Adding a New Contact

Use the following procedure to add a new contact to your Address Book.

### Saving a Number from the Home screen

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Contacts**  → .
2. At the **Save contact to** prompt, tap **Device** or tap **Add new account** if you want to add a new account to save the contact to.
3. Tap the image icon and assign a picture to the new entry by choosing one of three options:

- **Image:** retrieve a previously stored image from your Gallery or from your My files folder and assign it to this entry. Tap an image to assign the image to the contact, then tap **Done**.
- **Take picture:** use the camera to take a new picture and assign it to this entry, then tap **Done**.


4. Tap the **Name** field and use the on-screen keypad to enter the full name. For more information, refer to “*Entering Text*” on page 45.

– or –

Tap  next to the **Name** field to display additional name fields.

5. Tap the **Phone number** field.

The numerical keypad is displayed.

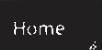
The **Mobile** button  initially displays next to the **Phone number** field. If you want to add a phone number that is not a mobile number, tap the **Mobile** button and select from Mobile, Home, Work, Work fax, Home Fax, Pager, Other, Custom (add your own label), or Callback.

6. Enter the phone number.

Tap  to add another Phone number field or tap  to delete a field.

**7. Tap the Email address field.**

The keypad is displayed.


The **Home** button  initially displays next to the **Email address** field. If you want to add an Email address that is not a Home email address, tap the **Home** button and select from Home, Work, Other, or Custom (add your own label).

**8. Enter the Email address.**

Tap  to add another Email address field or tap  to delete a field.

**9. Tap the Address field.**

The keypad is displayed.

The **Home** button  initially displays next to the **Address** field. If you want to add an address that is not a Home address, tap the **Home** button and select from Home, Work, Other, or Custom (add your own label).

**10. Enter the address.**

Tap  to add another address field or tap  to delete a field.



**11. Tap any of the following fields that you want to add to your new contact:**

- **Events:** tap to add a Birthday, Anniversary, Other, or Custom.
- **Groups:** assign the contact to Not assigned, Co-workers, Family, or Friends.
- **Add another field:** tap this button to add another field such as Phonetic name, Organization, IM, Notes, Nickname, Website, Internet call, or Relationship.

**12. Tap Save to save the new contact.**



## Editing an Existing Contact

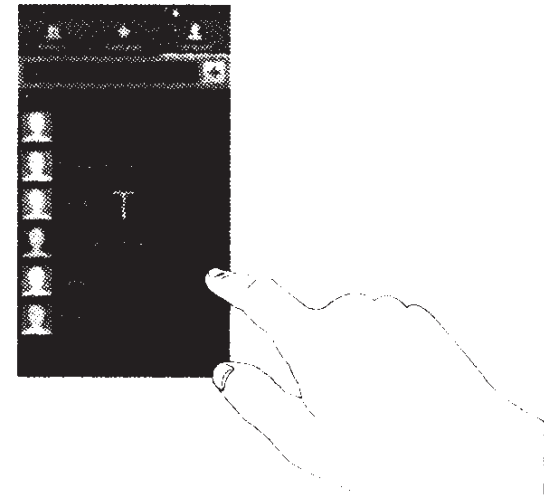
When editing an existing contact, you can tap a field and change or delete the information, or you can add additional fields to the contact's list of information.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Contacts** .
2. Press and hold the Contact that you want to edit.
3. Tap **Edit**.
4. Tap any of the fields to add, change, or delete information.
5. Tap **Save** to save the edited information.

## Finding an Address Book Entry

You can store phone numbers and their corresponding names onto your onboard memory.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Contacts** .
2. Within the Contacts list (sorted alphabetically), tap a letter on the right side of the display to quickly jump to the contacts beginning with that letter.



3. Tap the contact you wish to view.

## Joining Contacts

### *Joining Contact Information*




Many people now maintain multiple email accounts, social networking logins, and other similar account information. For example, a Facebook account login name might differ from a corporate email account login because they are maintained separately and for different groups of people.

This device can synchronize with multiple accounts such as Facebook, Twitter, MySpace, Corporate email, and Google. When you synchronize your camera with these accounts, each account creates a separate contact entry in the Contacts list.

If one of your contacts (Amy Smith, for example) has a regular email account that you maintain in Gmail, but also has a Facebook account under her maiden and married name, as well as a Yahoo! chat account, when you merge these accounts into your Contacts list you can join all of her entries and view the information in one record.

The next time you synchronize your camera with your accounts, any updates that contacts make to email account names, email addresses, etc. automatically update in your contacts list.

For more information about synchronizing accounts, see “*Synchronizing Accounts*” on page 54.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Contacts** .
2. Tap a contact name (the name you want to join to another entry). Note: typically this is the same contact with a different name or account information.
3. Press  → **Join contact**.  
The contact list is displayed.

---

**Note:** Only contacts stored on your camera can be joined.

---

4. Tap the second contact entry (the entry in which to join). The second contact is now joined with the first and the account information is merged into one screen.



---

**Note:** The information is still maintained in both entries, but displays in one record for easier viewing when you join the contacts.


---

5. Tap the **Connection** bar to view the contact information you joined. The contacts and information displays with an icon next to the contact name to indicate what type of account information is contained in the entry.

### ***Unjoining a Contact***




1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Contacts** .
2. Tap a contact name (the account name from which you want to unlink an entry). Note: typically this is the same contact with a different name or account information.
3. Tap the **Connection** bar.



4. Tap the minus sign  next to entry in which you want to unjoin. The contact is now separated and no longer displays in the merged record screen.




### ***Marking a Contact as Default***

When you use messaging type applications, the application needs to know which information is primary (default) in a contact entry list. For example, you may have three different contact records for John Smith, so the application will be looking for the “default” number or entry.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Contacts** .
2. Tap a Contact name.
3. Press  → **Mark as default**. The Mark as default screen displays radio buttons next to the contact names or phone numbers of all the linked contacts. The radio button next to the default contact will be green.
4. To change the default contact, tap the radio button next to another entry that you want to be the default. The radio button will turn green, then tap **Done**.

### **Synchronizing Accounts**




From the Accounts menu you decide if you want applications to synchronize, send, and receive data at any given time, or if you want the applications to synchronize automatically. After determining how you want the accounts to synchronize, indicate which account to synchronize with your Contacts list.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Contacts** .
2. Press  then tap **Accounts**.
3. Tap the **Auto sync app data** checkbox to create a checkmark and activate the feature.
4. Tap **OK** to synchronize all accounts.  
The accounts are synchronized.

### **Address Book Options**

You can access Address Book options while at the main Address Book page or while in the details page for a specific entry.

### ***Options in Address Book***




1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Contacts**  then press .
2. The following options are displayed:



- **Delete:** allows you to delete 1 or more of your contacts.
- **Import/Export:** allows you to move contacts to or from your memory card or USB storage. You can also send a namecard via Bluetooth, ChatON, Email, Gmail, or Wi-Fi Direct.
- **Merge with Samsung account:** allows you to merge your contacts together with your Samsung account contacts.
- **Merge with Google:** allows you to merge your contacts together with your Google account contacts.
- **Accounts:** allows you to add and manage your Samsung, ChatON, Google, LDAP (Lightweight Directory Access Protocol), and Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync accounts. Tap Add account and then follow the on-screen instructions.
- **Send email:** allows you to send an email using your Google account.
- **Contacts to display:** You can choose to display all of your contacts or only display contacts on your Device, SIM, or contacts stored to other accounts. You can also tap Customized list to change other options on how your contacts are displayed.
- **Settings:** allows you to choose set the following options:
  - **Only contacts with phones:** allows you to only display contacts that have phone numbers.

- **List by:** allows you to sort by First name or Last name.
- **Display contacts by:** allows you to sort by First name or Last name first.
- **Contact sharing settings:** allows you to send all or individual contacts via Bluetooth in the form of namecards.



### *Options at Selected Contact Screen*

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Contacts** .
2. Tap a contact and at the contact's display screen, press .
3. The following options are displayed:
  - **History:** allows you to add information to this contact.
  - **Edit:** allows you to edit the contact's information.
  - **Delete:** allows you to delete the contact from your Address Book.
  - **Join contact:** allows you to join the selected contact with other contacts in your list.
  - **Mark as default:** allows you to set this contact name and number as the default for this contact.
  - **Share namecard via:** allows you to send the contact's information via Bluetooth, ChatON, Email, Gmail, or Wi-Fi Direct.

- **Print contact** info: allows you to send the selected contact information to a connected printer.
- **Add shortcut to Home:** allows you to add this contact to your Contact shortcut list.





## Groups

### *Adding a Contact to a Group*

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Contacts** .
2. Press and hold a contact that you would like to add to a group.
3. Tap Add to group.
4. Tap a group entry.
5. Tap **Done**.




The contact is added to the group.

### *Removing a Contact From a Group*

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Contacts**  → **Groups** .
2. Tap a group entry.
3. Press  → **Remove member**.

4. Tap all of the contacts you want to remove from this group. A green checkmark will appear next to their name.
5. Tap **Done**.  
The contacts are now removed from the group.


### *Creating a New Group*

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Contacts**  → **Groups**  →  → **Create**.
2. Tap the **Group name** field and use the on-screen keypad to enter a new group name. For more information, refer to “Entering Text” on page 45.
3. Tap **Add member** to add contacts to the new group.
4. Tap each contact you want to add to create a checkmark. You can also tap **Select all**.
5. Tap **Done**.
6. Tap **Save** to save the new Group category.

### *Editing a Caller Group*

To edit a Group entry, there must be at least one member as part of the selected group.




1. From the Home screen, tap v  
**Groups** .

2. Tap a group entry.
3. Press  → **Edit**.
4. Make modifications to the **Group name** field if desired.
5. Tap **Add member** to add more contacts to this group.
6. Tap **Done**.
7. Tap **Save** to save the edited Group category.


## Address Book Favorites

Once you have stored contacts in the Address Book, you can add them to your Favorites list.


To view your Favorites list:

- From the Home screen, tap  → **Contacts**  → Favorites .

## Adding Favorites to your Address Book

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Contacts** .
2. Within the Contacts list, touch and hold a contact that you want to add to your favorites list.
3. Tap **Add to Favorites** on the displayed list.
4. A gold star will appear next to the contact in the Address Book.

## Removing Favorites from your Address Book

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Contacts** .
2. Within the Contacts list, touch and hold a contact that you want to remove from your favorites list. Contacts in your Favorites list will have a gold star.
3. Tap **Remove from favorites** on the displayed list.



4. The gold star will no longer appear next to the contact in the Address Book.

## Managing Address Book Contacts

You can copy, delete, and view the memory status for the contacts on your camera.

## Deleting Address Book Entries from the Device

You can delete contacts from your camera's memory.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Contacts** .
2. Within the Contacts list, touch and hold a contact that you want to delete.
3. Tap **Delete** on the displayed list.
4. At the **Delete** prompt, tap **OK** to delete the contact or **Cancel** to exit.

## Section 6: Multimedia

---




This section explains how to use the multimedia features of your camera, including Music Player, Google Play Music, Video Player, Play Movies & TV, Gallery, Photo Wizard, and Video Maker.


### Music Player

The Music Player is an application that can play music files.

The Music Player supports files with extensions AAC, AAC+, eAAC+, MP3, WMA, 3GP, MP4, and M4A. Launching the Music Player allows you to navigate through your music library, play songs, and create playlists (music files bigger than 300 KB are displayed)..

### Playing Music

1. Tap  → **Music Player** .
2. Tap a library category at the top of the screen (All, Playlists, Albums, Artists, Music square, or Folders) to view the available music files.
3. Scroll through the list of songs and tap an entry to begin playback.
4. The following Music Player controls are available:
  -  Pause the song.


-  Start the song after being paused.
-  Press and hold to rewind the song. Tap to go to previous song.
-  Press and hold to fast-forward the song. Tap to go to next song.
-  Volume control.
-  Repeat one: repeats the currently playing song.
-  Repeat all: replays the current list when the list ends.
-  Play All: plays the current song list once.
-  Shuffle On: the current list of songs are randomly shuffled for playback.
-  Shuffle Off: songs play in order and are not shuffled.
-  Provides access to the Music square.
-  Lists the current playlist songs.
-  Displays the current song in the player window.



Provides access to the SoundAlive feature.




## Music Player Options

To access additional options, follow these steps:

1. While in the Music Player, press .
2. The follow options are available:
  - **Add to play list:** adds the current music file to the Play list.
  - **Via Bluetooth:** scans for devices and pairs with a Bluetooth headset.
  - **Share via:** allows you to share your music by using Bluetooth, Dropbox, Email, Gmail, Group Cast, or Wi-Fi Direct.
  - **Delete:** allows you to delete the selected song.
  - **Search:** allows you to search for a specific song.
  - **Scan for nearby devices:** allows you to scan for devices near to connect to to share this song.
  - **Settings:** allows you to change your Music Player settings. For more information, refer to “Music Player Settings” on page 60.
  - **End:** allows you to end the Music Player app.

## Music Player Settings

The Music Player Settings menu allows you to set preferences for the Music Player such as whether you want the music to play in the background, sound effects, and how the music menu displays.




1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Music Player** .
2. Press  → **Settings**.
3. Select one of the following settings:
  - **SoundAlive:** set the type of equalization that you desire.
  - **Play speed:** set the play speed anywhere between 0.5X and 2.0X using the slider.
  - **Music menu:** this menu allows you to select which categories you want to display. Choices are: Albums, Artists, Genres, Music square, Folders, Composers, Years, Most played, Recently played, or Recently added. Tap each item that you want to display in the Music menu.
  - **Lyrics:** when activated, the lyrics of the song are displayed if available.
  - **Music auto off:** when activated, music will automatically turn off after a set interval.



## Using Playlists




Playlists are used to assign songs to a list of preferred media which can then be grouped into a list for later playback. These Playlists can be created via either the handset's Music Player options menu or from within a 3rd party music application (such as Windows Media Player) and then downloaded to the handset.

### Creating a Playlist

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Music Player** .
2. Tap the **Playlists** tab.
3. Press  → **Create playlist**.
4. Type a name for this playlist in the field and tap **OK**.




### Adding Music to a Playlist

To add files to the playlist:

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Music Player** .
2. Tap the **Playlists** tab.
3. Tap the playlist name in which to add music.
4. Tap  **Add music**.
5. Tap a music file, or tap **Select all** to add all the music tracks to this playlist then tap **Done**.

## Removing Music from a Playlist

To remove music files from a playlist:

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Music Player** .
2. Tap the **Playlists** tab.
3. Tap the playlist name in which to delete music.
4. Press  → **Delete**.
5. Tap the checkbox to the left of each track you want to remove from this playlist, or tap **Select all** to remove all the music tracks from this playlist, then tap **Delete**.

### Editing a Playlist

Besides adding and removing music files in a playlist, you can also rename the playlist.



To edit a playlist:

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Music Player** .
2. Tap **Playlists**.
3. Press  → **Edit title**.
4. Tap a playlist name to edit.
5. Enter a new name for the playlist then tap **OK**.



For information on downloading music for your camera, see "Google Play Music" on page 62.

## Google Play Music

With Google Play Music, you can play music that you have added to your music file as well as any music you copied from your PC. While offline, you can listen to music you have copied from your PC.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Music Player** .
2. Follow the on-screen instructions to use the Play Music app.

## Video Player

1. Tap  → **Music Player** .
2. All videos that you have on your camera and memory card will be displayed. Tap the video that you want to play.
3. The video will begin to play.
4. The following video controls are available:



Pause the video.



Start the video after being paused.



Press and hold to rewind the video. Tap to go to previous video.



Press and hold to fast-forward the video. Tap to go to next video.



Volume control.



Capture Icon



PIP (Picture In Picture) view. The video will be played in a small window so you can use your camera for other purposes while watching the video. Double-tap screen to return to previous size.



Original size view. The video will be played in its original size.



Full-screen in ratio view. The video is enlarged as much as possible without becoming distorted.



Full-screen view. The entire screen is used, which may cause some minor distortion.





---

**Note:** The screen view icons are a three-way toggle. The icon that is displayed, is the mode that will appear after the icon is tapped. Google Play Music

---

## Play Movies & TV

With Google Play Movies & TV, you can rent thousands of different movies and television shows. You can watch instantly, or download your movie or show for offline viewing at a later time.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Play Movies & TV** .
2. Log on to your Google account if you have not already done so.
3. Following the on-screen instructions for renting and viewing movies and TV shows.

## Gallery

The Gallery is where you view photos and play back videos. For photos, you can also perform basic editing tasks, view a slideshow, set photos as wallpaper or contact image, and share as a picture message.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Gallery** .

All of the Albums that hold your pictures and videos will be displayed with folder name and number of files.

2. Tap an Album and thumbnails of the contents will be displayed.

---

**Note:** If your device displays that the memory is full when you access Gallery, delete some of the files by using My files or other file management applications and try again. For more information, refer to “My Files” on page 126.

---



## Viewing Pictures




1. From the main gallery, tap  → **Slideshow** to see a slideshow of all of your pictures.
2. Tap a thumbnail to view a single picture.

---

**Note:** If no control icons are displayed on the screen in addition to the picture, tap anywhere on the screen to display them.



---

3. The following options are available at the top of the screen:
  - **Back**  : sends you back to the picture gallery.
  - **Home**  : sends you to the Home screen.

- **Share via** : allows you to share the picture via Bluetooth, ChatON, Dropbox, Email, Gmail, Google+, Group Play, Instagram, Picasa, S Memo, or Wi-Fi Direct.
- **Delete** : allows you to delete the picture.
- **Options** : displays additional options.

### Viewing Videos

**Note:** If no control icons are displayed on the screen in addition to the picture, tap anywhere on the screen to display them.

1. Tap a video to select it.
  2. Tap  to play the video.
  3. Press  for additional options.
- For video player controls, see “Video Player” on page 62.

### Photo Wizard

The Photo Wizard application provides basic editing functions for pictures that you take on your device. Along with basic image tuning like brightness, contrast, and color it also provides a wide variety of effects used for editing the picture.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Photo Wizard** .
2. Tap a picture to load it into the Photo editor.



– or –

Tap  to take a picture with the camera.

3. Use the Photo editor controls to edit your picture.



### Video Editor

With the Video Editor, you can edit videos you take with your camera. You can add themes and also add additional media to your videos such as music and photos.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Video Editor** .
2. Follow the on-screen instructions for using the Video Editor.

# Instagram

Instagram is a fun way to share your life with friends through pictures. Snap a photo with your camera, then choose a filter to transform the image into a great picture.

- 1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Instagram** .
- 2. At the Instagram display, tap **Register** if you have never created an account, otherwise, tap **Sign in**.
- 3. Follow the on-screen instructions for using Instagram.

## Section 7: Messaging

---

This section describes how to send and receive different types of messages. It also includes the features and functionality associated with messaging.

### Types of Messages

Your camera provides the following message types:

- Email and Gmail Messages
- Google Talk
- Google+ and Messenger Messages
- ChatON

### Using Email

Email enables you to review and create email using various email services. You can also receive text message alerts when you receive an important email.

### Creating an Email Account

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Email** .

Your accounts screen displays with an Email setup screen displayed.

2. Enter your email address in the **Email address** field.
3. Enter your password in the **Password** field.

4. If you want to see your password as it is being typed, tap **Show password** to create a checkmark.

5. Tap **Next**.

6. At the **Account options** screen, tap any of the options you would like.

7. Tap **Next**.

8. Enter a name for this email account (optional).

9. Tap **Done**.

### Creating a Corporate Email Account

Use the following procedure to configure your camera to synchronize with a corporate email account.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Email** .

Your accounts screen displays with an Email setup screen displayed.

2. Enter your email address in the **Email address** field.

3. Enter your password in the **Password** field.

4. If you want to see your password as it is being typed, tap **Show password** to create a checkmark.

5. If you want all of your emails sent from this email account by default, tap checkbox to create a checkmark.

6. Tap **Manual setup**.

7. Tap the **Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync** field.

8. Enter all the Exchange server information, Domain, User name and Password, then tap **Next**.

9. At the **Activation** prompt, tap **OK**.

The **Account options** screen is displayed.

10. Enter the desired information in the different fields, then tap **Next**.

11. Enter an Account name for this account (Optional) and tap **Done**.

Wait for the Inbox to synchronize before use.

12. Press  → **Settings** to change the account settings.

### ***Creating Additional Email Accounts***

To create additional email accounts after setting up your first account, follow these steps:

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Email** .

Your Email screen displays showing your emails from the active account.

2. Press  → **Settings**.

3. Tap  to add another email account.

4. Enter the information required to set up another account.  
For more information, refer to “*Creating an Email Account*” on page 66.

### ***Switching Between Email Accounts***

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Email** .

Your Email screen displays showing your emails from the active account.

2. Tap the Inbox button at the top of your screen that displays the optional name you assigned to your active email account, for example, Work, Gmail, etc.

Your Email accounts screen is displayed.

3. Tap the Email account you would like to switch to. You can also select **Combined view** which will display email messages from all accounts.

4. The new Email account is displayed.

## Using Gmail



Gmail is Google's web-based email. When you first setup the camera, Gmail is configured. Depending on the synchronization settings, Gmail is automatically synchronized with your Gmail account.

## Signing into Your Gmail

---

**Note:** You must sign in to your Gmail account in order to access Gmail.



---

1. Sign on to your Google account if you are not already signed on. For more information, refer to “*Creating a New Google Account*” on page 12.
2. From the Home screen, tap  → **Gmail** .
3. Follow the on-screen instructions.




The Inbox loads conversations and email.



## Creating a Gmail Message

1. From the Gmail Inbox, tap  at the bottom of the screen to create a new message.
2. Enter the recipients Email address in the **To** field. Separate multiple recipient email addresses with a comma.

3. Tap  and select **Add Cc/Bcc** to add a carbon or blind copy.
4. Enter the subject of this message in the **Subject** field.
5. Tap the **Compose email** field and begin composing your message.
6. Tap  to send.




## Viewing a Gmail Message

1. From the Gmail Inbox, tap a message to view it.
2. The following options are available at the top or bottom of the screen after a message has been selected:
  - **Archive**  : archives the selected message.
  - **Delete**  : deletes the message.
  - **Change labels**  : allows you to attach labels to a message.

This is similar to putting it in a folder.
  - **Mark Unread**  : after reading a message, marks as unread.
  - **Newer**: swipe your screen to the right to see newer messages.
  - **Older**: swipe your screen to the left to see older messages.
3. Press  to select one of the following additional options:
  - **Mark important/not important**: allows you to set the importance of a message.




- **Mute:** allows you to mute the sound in a message if applicable.
- **Report spam:** allows you to report a message as spam. Tap the UNDO option if you change your mind.
- **Report phishing:** reports the Email message as a phishing email attempt
- **Settings:** displays Email settings that you can modify.
- **Send feedback:** allows you to send feedback or report a problem.
- **Help:** displays the Google.com webpage so you can search the web for help.

### Other Gmail Options

1. Tap  at the bottom of the screen to refresh the screen, send and receive new emails, and synchronize your email with the Gmail account.
2. Tap  at the bottom of the screen to set up and manage Labels for your Gmail messages.
3. Tap  at the bottom of the screen to search through your Gmail messages.

### Google Talk

Google Talk is a free Windows and web-based application for instant messaging offered by Google. Conversation logs are automatically saved to a Chats area in your Gmail account. This allows you to search a chat log and store them in your Gmail accounts.

1. Log on to your Google account if you have not already done so. For more information, refer to “*Creating a New Google Account*” on page 12.
2. From the Home screen, tap  → **Talk** .
3. Begin using Google Talk.
4. Press  for more information on using Google Talk.

---

**Note:** The Network confirms your login and processes. This could take up to 5 minutes to complete.

---

### Google +

Google+ makes messaging and sharing with your friends a lot easier. You can set up Circles of friends, visit the Stream to get updates from your Circles, use Messenger for fast





messaging with everyone in your Circles, or use Instant Upload to automatically upload videos and photos to your own private album on Google+.

1. Sign on to your Google account. For more information, refer to “Creating a New Google Account” on page 12.
2. From the Home screen, tap  → **Google+** .
3. Select the account you want to use to sign in to Google+.  
– or –  
Tap **Add account** to create another account.
4. Follow the on-screen instructions to use Google+.
5. Visit [www.google.com/mobile/+/](http://www.google.com/mobile/+/) for more information.

## Messenger

Messenger allows you to bring groups of friends together into a simple group conversation. When you get a new conversation in Messenger, Google+ sends an update to your camera.



1. Sign on to your Google account. For more information, refer to “Creating a New Google Account” on page 12.
2. From the Home screen, tap  → **Messenger** .
- or –

From the Google+ application, select **Messenger**.

3. Follow the on-screen instructions for using Messenger.
4. Press  → **Help** for more information.

## ChatON

Use ChatON to chat with any device that has a mobile phone number.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **ChatON** .
2. Create your buddies list by entering phone numbers or email addresses of Samsung accounts, or selecting buddies from the list of suggestions.  
If ChatON is installed on a friend's device, the friend is added to your buddies list automatically.
3. Select a buddy to start chatting.



## Section 8: Changing Your Settings

This section explains the settings used for customizing your device.

### Accessing Settings

- From any Home screen, tap  → **Settings** .

– or –



From any Home screen, press  → **Settings**.

The Settings screen displays.

### Wi-Fi Settings



This section describes the Wi-Fi settings. For information on how to use Wi-Fi, see “*Wi-Fi*” on page 103.

### Activating Wi-Fi


1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Wi-Fi**.
2. Tap the ON/OFF slider, located to the right of the Wi-Fi field, to turn Wi-Fi ON .
3. Tap Scan to scan for available Wi-Fi networks. For more information, refer to “*Connect to a Wi-Fi Network*” on page 104.

### Advanced Wi-Fi Settings

The advanced Wi-Fi settings allow you to set up and manage wireless access points.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Wi-Fi**.
2. Press  → **Advanced**.



The following options are available:

- **Network notification:** alerts you when a new WAP is available.
- **Keep Wi-Fi on during sleep:** allows you to specify when to disconnect from Wi-Fi.
- **Wi-Fi timer:** Tap the ON/OFF slider, located to the right of the Wi-Fi timer, to turn Wi-Fi timer on . Press the time and use the arrow keys to set the **Starting time** and the **Ending time**. Press **Cancel** to return or **Done** to save.
- **MAC address:** view your device’s MAC address, required when connecting to some secured networks (not configurable).
- **IP address:** view your device’s IP address.

## Bluetooth settings

In this menu you can activate Bluetooth, view or assign a device name, activate your camera so other Bluetooth devices can discover it, or scan for other, available Bluetooth devices with which to pair.



### Activating Bluetooth

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings**.
2. Tap the ON/OFF slider, located to the right of the Bluetooth field, to turn Bluetooth ON .

The Bluetooth icon  is displayed.

### Additional Bluetooth Settings


When Bluetooth is on, additional settings are available.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Bluetooth**.
2. Tap **Scan** to scan for nearby discoverable devices. After searching, tap a device to pair with it. For more information, refer to “Pairing Bluetooth Devices” on page 108.
3. Press  and select a Bluetooth setting to configure:

- **Rename device:** Your device’s default name displays on screen. Tap to change the device name. Available when Bluetooth is turned On.
  - **Visibility timeout:** Use this setting to control when to automatically turn off the Discoverable option: 2 minutes, 5 minutes, 1 hour, or Never timeout.
  - **Received files:** Show the list of files received by using Bluetooth.
4. Tap the checkbox next to **EK-GC110** if you do not want your camera visible to other Bluetooth devices.

### Data Usage

From this screen you can view your Mobile data usage and turn your Mobile data capability On or Off.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Data usage**.
2. Tap the **Data usage cycle** drop-down menu and select a date.

The data usage displays as a visual (chart) and also displays a list of each application with a breakdown of how much data was used per application.

3. Slide the vertical white bars to the left to expand the date range of the display.

---


**Note:** Data is measured by your device. Your service provider may account for data usage differently.

---

4. Press to display additional options. Tap to activate.
- Auto-sync data: allows your accounts to automatically sync
  - Mobile hotspots: displays available mobile hotspots.

### More Settings

This option displays additional Connectivity information.

- From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **More settings**.


Options display for Airplane mode, Smart network, VPN, Nearby devices, AllShare Cast, and Kies via Wi-Fi.

### Airplane mode

Airplane mode allows you to use many of your device's features, such the Camera, Games, and more, when you are in an airplane or in any other area where making or receiving data is prohibited.


---

**Important!** When your camera is in Airplane Mode, it cannot access online information or applications.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings**.
2. Tap **More settings** located under the Connectivity heading.
3. Tap **Airplane mode**. A check mark displayed next to the feature indicates Airplane mode is active.
4. At the **Airplane mode** prompt, tap **OK**.  
The Airplane mode icon is displayed at the top of your screen.

### Smart network

The Smart network feature allows you to extend battery life by only enabling networks when the screen is turned on.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **More settings**.
2. Tap the **Smart network** checkbox to create a checkmark and activate the feature.

## VPN

The VPN settings menu allows you to set up and manage Virtual Private Networks (VPNs).


---

**Important!** Before you can use a VPN you must establish and configure one.

---

Before you add a VPN you must determine which VPN protocol to use: PPTP



L2TP/IPSec PSK, L2TP/IPSec RSA, IPSec Xauth PSK, IPSec Xauth RSA, IPSec Hybrid RSA.

1. Before using VPN, you must first set up a screen unlock PIN or password. For more information, refer to “Lock Screen Settings” on page 81.
2. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **More settings** → **VPN**.
3. Tap **Add VPN network**.
4. Enter a name for the VPN network in the **Name** field.
5. Select a VPN type from the **Type** drop-down menu.
6. Enter the **Server address** and any other required fields that are dependent upon the **Type** you entered previously.

7. Tap the **PPP encryption (MPPE)** check box if desired.
8. Tap the **Show advanced options** check box to display additional VPN options.
9. Tap **Save** to save your VPN settings.

## Nearby devices


This option allows you to share your media files with nearby devices using DLNA and connected to the same Wi-Fi.

1. Connect to a Wi-Fi network. For more information, refer to “Activating Wi-Fi” on page 71.
2. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **More settings** → **Nearby devices**.
3. Verify Wi-Fi Direct is enabled and you are paired with the device you wish to detect and share content with.
4. Tap the **File sharing** checkbox to create a checkmark and activate File sharing.
5. Verify  (**Nearby devices**) appears at the top of the screen.
6. At the Nearby devices prompt, tap **OK**.
7. Tap **Shared contents**, then check the media you would like to share. Tap **OK**.

8. Tap **Device name**, then use the on-screen keyboard to change the name shown to others. Tap **Save**.
9. Tap **Allowed devices list**, then select the connected devices you would like to allow.
10. Tap **Not-allowed devices list**, then select the connected devices you would like to not allow.
11. Tap **Download to**, then select the destination of any downloaded (shared) content. Choose from Device or SD card.
12. Tap **Upload from other devices**, then select the actions you'll take when you upload content from other devices. Choose from either Always accept, Always ask, or Always reject.




## Kies via Wi-Fi

Kies via Wi-Fi allows you to sync your PC wirelessly with your device provided they are both on the same Wi-Fi network. You can view and share videos, photos, music, ringtones, and more.

1. From your PC, download the Samsung Kies application if you don't already have it. You can find it at [samsung.com](http://samsung.com).
2. From your PC, launch the Samsung Kies application.
3. From your PC, connect to a Wi-Fi network.
4. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **More settings** → **Kies via Wi-Fi**.
5. From your device, connect to the same Wi-Fi network that your PC is connected to if you have not already done so. For more information, refer to “*Connect to a Wi-Fi Network*” on page 104.


## Blocking mode

When Blocking mode is enabled, notifications for selected features will be disabled. You will only receive notifications of incoming calls from people on your allowed list.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Blocking mode**.
2. In a single motion touch and slide the **Blocking mode** slider to the right to turn it on .  
Confirm that the Blocking mode active icon  appears in the Status bar.
3. Place a green checkmark adjacent to those features you would like to enable. Choose from: Disable notifications and Disable alarm and timer.
4. Configure a timeframe for these features to be active.  
Remove the checkmark from the **Always** field to configure the **From** and **To** time fields.

## Sound


From this menu you can control the sounds on the camera.

- From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Sound**.  
The following options display:

## Volume

The Volume option allows you to change the volume for all camera sounds in one easy location.



1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Sound** → **Volume**.
2. Touch and drag the slider to adjust the sound volume for Music, video, games and other media, Notifications, and System.
3. Tap **OK**.


### **Default notifications**

This option allows you to set the notification that will sound for notifications and alarms.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Sound**.
2. Tap **Default notifications**.
3. Tap a Default notification sound and tap **OK**.

### **System Sounds**

There are several sounds you can set for system activity.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Sound**.
2. Tap the **Keytones** check box to create a checkmark and activate the feature if you would like sounds played when the keypad is pressed.
3. Tap the **Touch sounds** check box to create a checkmark and activate the feature if you would like sounds played when making screen selections.

4. Tap the **Screen lock sound** check box to create a checkmark and activate the feature if you would like sounds played when locking and unlocking the screen.

### **Display**

In this menu, you can change various settings for the display.

- From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Display**.

The following options display:

- **Wallpaper**: allows you to set the Wallpaper for your Home screen, Lock screen, or both. For more information, refer to “*Changing the Wallpaper*” on page 41.
- **Screen mode**: allows you to select from several different color modes.
- **Brightness**: configures the LCD Brightness levels. Tap and drag the slider and tap **OK**.
- **Auto-rotate screen**: allows you to switch the display orientation automatically when you rotate the camera.
- **Screen timeout**: adjusts the delay time before the screen automatically turns off. Selections are: 15 seconds, 30 seconds, 1 minute, 2 minutes, 5 minutes, 10 minutes, and 30 minutes.


- **Font style:** allows you to set the font style that your camera will use. You can also tap Get fonts online to choose from a wider selection.
- **Font size:** allows you to select which size of font is displayed.
- **Display battery percentage:** allows you to see the battery charge percentage next to the battery charge icon at the top of the display.

## Storage

From this menu you can view the memory allocation for the memory card and USB as well as mount or unmount the SD card.

For more information about mounting or unmounting the SD card, see “*Memory Card*” on page 43.


To view the memory allocation for your external SD card:

- From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Storage**. The available memory displays under the **Total** space and **Available space** headings for both Device memory and SD card.

## SD card

- Tap **Unmount SD** card to unmount your SD card so that you can safely remove it, then tap **OK**.

– or –

1. Tap **Format SD** card to re-format your SD card. This will delete all data on your SD card including music, videos, and photos.
2. Tap **Format SD card** again.
3. Tap **Delete all** to continue or press  to cancel.



---

**Note:** The **Format SD** card option is only available when your SD card is mounted.

---

## Power


Power Saving Mode allows you to manage your camera to conserve power.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Power**.
2. Tap the **OFF / ON** icon next to **Power saving mode** to turn Power saving mode on .
3. Tap **Auto power off**.
4. Tap the **Fast power-on** checkbox to create a checkmark and activate the feature if you would like a speedy start-up for 24 hours without using a USB connection.



## Battery

See how much battery power is used for device activities.

1. From a Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Battery**.  
The battery level displays in percentage. The amount of time the battery was used also displays. Battery usage displays in percentages per application.
2. Tap **Screen, Android System, Android OS, Media server, Device idle**, or any other listed application to view how it is affecting battery use.

---

**Note:** Other applications may be running that affect battery use.

---

## Application Manager

You can download and install applications from Play Store or create applications using the Android SDK and install them on your device. Use Application manager settings to manage applications.


---

**Warning!** Because this device can be configured with system software not provided by or supported by Google or any other company, end-users operate these devices at their own risk.

---


## Memory Usage



See how memory is being used by Downloaded or Running applications.

1. From a Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Application manager**.
2. Tap Downloaded, Running, or All to display memory usage for that category of applications.  
The graph at the bottom of the Downloaded tab shows used and free device memory. The graph at the bottom of the Running tab shows used and free RAM.

## Downloaded

Displays apps you have downloaded onto your device.

1. From a Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Application manager**.
2. Tap the **Downloaded** tab to view a list of all the downloaded applications on your device.

3. To switch the order of the lists displayed in the Downloaded tabs, press  → **Sort by size** or **Sort by name**.
4. To reset your application preferences, press  → **Reset app preferences**.

---


**Note:** This will reset the preferences for disabled apps, disabled app notifications, default applications for actions, and background data restrictions for apps. You will not lose any app data.

---

5. Tap an application to view and update information about the application, including memory usage, default settings, and permissions.

## Running Services

View and control services running on your device.

1. From a Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Application manager**.
2. Tap the **Running** tab. All the applications that are currently running on the device display.

3. Tap **Show cached processes** to display all the cached processes that are running. Tap **Show services in use** to switch back.
4. Tap one of the applications to view application information. The following options display:
  - **Stop:** Stops the application from running on the device. This is usually done prior to uninstalling the application

---

**Warning!** Not all services can be stopped. Stopping services may have undesirable consequences on the application or Android System.

---


- **Report:** Report failure and other application information.
- 

**Note:** Options vary by application.

---

## Location Services


The Location services settings allow you to set up how the camera will determine your location and the sensor settings for your camera.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Location services**.
2. Tap any of the following options to create a checkmark and activate the service:
  - **Use wireless networks:** allows applications to use data from mobile networks and Wi-Fi to help determine your location.
  - **Use GPS satellites:** allows applications to use GPS to pinpoint your location.
  - **Location and Google search:** allows Google to use your location data for improved search results and other services.

## Lock Screen Settings

Choose settings for unlocking your screen. For more information about using the lock and unlock features, see *“Locking and Unlocking the Touch Screen”* on page 9.

### Screen Lock

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Lock screen**.

2. Tap **Screen lock** for these options:

- **Swipe:** Swipe the screen to unlock it.
- **Motion:** While tapping and holding the screen, tilt the device forward to unlock.
- **Pattern:** A screen unlock pattern is a touch gesture you create and use to unlock your device. Follow the prompts to create or change your screen unlock pattern.
- **PIN:** Select a PIN to use for unlocking the screen.
- **Password:** Create a password for unlocking the screen.
- **None:** No pattern, PIN, or password is required. The screen will never lock.


### Lock screen options


Activate or deactivates various Unlock screen functions.

---

**Note:** The Lock screen options are only available when the **Screen lock** option is set to **Swipe** or **Motion**.

---

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Lock screen** → **Lock screen options**.
2. The following options are available:
  - **Clock** allows you to display the digital clock while the Lock screen is active. Enabled by default.

- **Weather** displays the current area weather on the Lock screen. Touch and slide the slider to the right to turn it on . Tap and set both the temperature units (F or C) and a refresh time.
- **Ripple effect** activates/deactivates the ripple effect on the lock screen when you tap it.
- **Help text** shows help information on the Lock screen.
- **Wake up in lock screen** requires that you say a command to wake-up S Voice.
- **Set wake-up command** designates your S Voice wake-up commands. Tap Wake-up S Voice and follow the on-screen prompts to create a new verbal command.

---

**Note:** These options vary depending on the selected Lock settings.

---

### ***Owner information***

This option allows you to show owner information on the lock screen. You can also enter text to display on the lock screen.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Lock screen** → **Owner information**.


2. Enter text that you would like displayed on your lockscreen and tap **OK**.

## **Security**

The Security settings allow you to determine the security level for your camera.

### ***Encryption***

To require a numeric PIN or password to decrypt your camera each time you power it on or encrypt the data on your SD card each time it is connected:

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Security**.
2. Tap **Encrypt device**. For more information, read the displayed help screen.
3. Tap **Encrypt external SD card** to enable the encryption on SD card data that requires a password be entered each time the microSD card is connected.


---

**Tip:** Make sure your battery is charged more than 80 percent. Encryption may take an hour or more.

---

### ***Make passwords visible***

When enabled, password characters display briefly as you touch them while entering passwords.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Security**.
2. Tap **Make passwords visible** to create a checkmark and enable or disable the display of password characters.

### ***Device Administrators***

The Device Administration feature allows you to select one or more administration applications that control your device for security purposes (for example, if your camera is lost or stolen). These applications enforce remote or local device security policies.


Some of the features a device administration application might control are:

- Setting the number of failed password attempts before the device is restored to factory settings.
- Automatically locking the device.
- Restoring factory settings on the device

---


**Note:** If a device uses multiple enabled administration applications, the strictest policy is enforced.

---

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Security**.
2. Tap **Device administrators**.
3. Select a device administrator and follow the prompts. If no device administrators are listed, you can download them from the Play Store.

### ***Unknown sources***

This feature allows you to download and install non-Market applications.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Security**.
2. Tap **Unknown sources**.  
A check mark is displayed to indicate it is active.


---

**Warning!** Enabling this option causes your camera and personal data to be more vulnerable to attack by applications from unknown sources.

---

## Trusted Credentials

If a certificate authority (CA) certificate gets compromised or for some other reason you do not trust it, you can disable or remove it.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Security**.

2. Tap **Trusted credentials**.

The trusted credentials screen has two tabs:

- **System**: Displays CA certificates that are permanently installed in the ROM of your device.
- **User**: Displays any CA certificates that you installed, for example, in the process of installing a client certificate.

3. Tap a CA certificate to examine its details.  
A scrolling screen displays the details.

4. Scroll to the bottom of the details screen and tap **Disable** to disable a System certificate or **Remove** to remove a User certificate.

---

**Caution!** When you disable a system CA certificate, the **Disable** button changes to **Enable**, so you can enable the certificate again, if necessary. When you remove a user-installed CA certificate, it is permanently deleted and must be re-installed, if needed.

---

5. Tap **OK** to return to the certificate list.

When enabled, a check mark appears in the check box.


### *Install from device storage*

Install encrypted certificates from an installed memory card.

---

**Note:** You must have installed a memory card containing encrypted certificates to use this feature.

---

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Security**.

2. Tap **Install from device storage**, then choose a certificate and follow the prompts to install.




## ***Clear credentials***

Clear stored credentials.

---

**Note:** This setting only appears if you have installed encrypted certificates.

---


1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Security**.
2. Tap **Clear credentials** to remove all certificates.

## ***Language and input***

This menu allows you to configure the language in which to display the menus. You can also set onscreen keyboard options.



### ***Language***

You can change the language used by your device by following these steps:

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Language and input** → **Language**.
2. Tap a language from the list.



## ***Keyboards and Input Methods***

You can change the keyboard used by your device by following these steps:

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Language and input**.
2. Tap **Default** and select a keyboard.  
Select Samsung keyboard.
3. Tap **Set up input methods**.
4. Tap the  icon next to the input method that you would like to configure the settings for.
5. Based on your selection of input method, the appropriate settings will appear and are explained below.

### ***Google voice typing settings***

From this menu you can set Samsung keyboard options.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Language and input**.
2. Tap the  icon next to **Google voice typing**.
3. The following options are available:

- **Choose input languages:** tap on a language that you want to input. Select Automatic to use the local language or select a language from the list.
- **Block offensive words:** tap to create a checkmark and enable the blocking of recognized offensive words from the results of your voice-input Google typing.
- **Download offline speech recognition:** Enables voice input while offline.

### *Samsung Keyboard settings*

From this menu you can set Samsung keyboard options.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Language and input**.

2. Tap the  icon next to Samsung keyboard.

- **Portrait keypad types** allows you to choose a keypad configuration (Qwerty [default] or 3x4 Keyboard).
- **Input language** sets the input language. Tap a language from the available list. The keyboard is updated to the selected language.




- **Predictive text** enables predictive text entry mode. This must be enabled to gain access to the advanced settings. Touch and hold to access the advanced settings. Touch and slide the slider to the right to turn it on .
- **My word list:** allows you to choose from previously entered and stored words.
- **T9Trace:** allows you to type words by swiping between onscreen keys.
- **Keyboard swipe** allows you to swipe the screen horizontally to switch between letters and symbols.
- **Handwriting** enables the device to recognize on-screen handwriting and convert it to text.
- **Voice input** displays the voice entry button on the keyboard.
- **Auto capitalization** automatically capitalizes the first letter of the first word in each sentence (standard English style).
- **Auto-punctuate** automatically inserts a full stop in a sentence by tapping the space bar twice when using the on-screen QWERTY keyboard.
- **Character preview** provides an automatic preview of the current character selection within the text string. This is helpful when multiple characters are available within one key.



- **Key-tap sound** enables auditory feedback when you tap an on-screen key.
- **Tutorial** launches a brief on-screen tutorial covering the main concepts related to the Samsung keyboard.
- **Reset settings** resets the keyboard settings back to their original configuration.


## ***Predictive Text Settings***

From this menu you can set Predictive Text settings.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Language and input**.
2. Tap the  icon next to **Samsung keyboard**.
3. Tap the ON/OFF slider, located to the right of the **Predictive text** field, to turn it ON .
4. Tap Predictive text.
5. Tap the **Word completion** field to enable word completion. Your device will predict how to complete the word you have started.
6. Tap the **Word completion point** field to set how many letters should be entered before a prediction is made
7. Tap the **Spell correction** field. This option corrects typographical errors by selecting from a list of possible words that reflect the characters of the keys you tapped as well as the characters of nearby keys.
8. Tap the **Next word prediction** field to enable word prediction for the next word.
9. Tap the **Auto-append** field to automatically add predictions to the word you are typing.
10. Tap the **Auto-substitution** field to automatically replace words that you are typing. This option will help for accidental misspellings.
11. Tap the **Regional correction** field. This option sets the device to automatically correct mistyped words according to normal spelling for your region.
12. Tap the **Recapture** field. This option sets the device to re-display the word suggestion list when you select the wrong word from the list.
13. To add words to substitute (for example you've becomes you've) tap **Auto substitution list**


## Speech Settings

This menu allows you to set the speech settings for Voice input.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Language and input**.
2. Tap **Voice recognizer** and select Google or Samsung powered by Vlingo.
3. Tap **Voice search** to configure the following:
  - **Language:** Choose a language for your voice input.
  - **Speech output:** Sets whether you will use speech output always or only when using hands-free.
  - **Block offensive words:** Enable or disable blocking of recognized offensive words from the results of your voice-input Google searches.
  - **Hotword detection:** Enable to being able to launch voice search by saying the word “Google”.
  - **Download offline speech recognition:** Enables voice input while offline.
4. Tap **Text-to-speech output** and select **Google Text-to-speech Engine** or **Samsung TTS**.


5. Tap  next to the preferred TTS engine configure the following settings:

### Google Text-to-Speech Engine

- **Language:** allows you to set the language for spoken text.
  - **Settings for Google Text-to-speech Engine:** allows you to view Open Source Licenses.
  - **Install voice data:** allows you to install voice data for speech synthesis.
  - **Language:** allows you to set the language for spoken text.
6. From the **Text-to speech output** screen, scroll down to access the following options:
    - **Speech rate:** Set the speed at which the text is spoken.
    - **Listen to an example:** Play a sample of speech synthesis (available if voice data is installed).
  7. Touch and slide the slider next to **Driving mode**  to the right to turn it on and enable incoming notifications to be read out automatically.

### Pointer speed

This option sets your Pointer speed.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Language and input**.


2. Tap **Pointer speed** then drag the slider to the right to go faster or to the left to go slower.
3. Tap **OK** to save your setting.

### ***Back up and reset***

The Back up and reset settings allow you to back up your data, back up accounts, automatically restore your camera, and reset your settings to the factory settings.

### ***Back Up My Data***

By setting this option, the Google server will back up all of your settings and data.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Back up and reset**.
2. Tap **Back up my data** to enable or disable back up of application data, WI-Fi passwords, and other settings to the Google server.

### ***Backup Account***


If you have enabled the **Back up my data** option, then the **Backup account** option is available.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Back up and reset**.

2. Tap **Backup account** and tap your Google Gmail account or tap **Add account** to set your Google Gmail account to be backed up to the Google server.


### ***Automatic Restore***

By setting this option, when you reinstall an application, all of your backed up settings and data will be restored.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Back up and reset**.
2. Tap **Automatic restore** to enable or disable automatic restoration of settings from the Google server.

### ***Factory Data Reset***

From this menu you can reset your camera and sound settings to the factory default settings.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Back up and reset**.
2. Tap **Factory data reset**.

The Factory data reset screen displays reset information.

3. Tap **Reset device**, then follow the prompts to perform the reset.

---


**Warning!** Performing a Factory data reset will erase all data from your device and internal SD card, including your Google account, system and application data and settings, and downloaded applications. It will not erase current system software, bundled applications, and external SD card files such as music and photos.

---

## Add Account

This menu allows you to set up, manage, and synchronize accounts, including your Google and email accounts.

### *Adding an Account*


1. From a Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Add account**.
2. Tap one of the account types.
3. Use the keyboard and follow the prompts to enter your credentials and set up the account.  
A green circle will appear next to the account type once you have created an account. Your email account will also be displayed in the **Accounts** section of the main Settings menu

## Removing an Account

---


**Important!** Removing an account also deletes all of its messages, contacts, and other data from the device.

---

1. From a Home screen, tap  → **Settings**.
2. Tap the account which is located in the **Accounts** section.
3. Tap the account name.
4. Tap **Remove account**, then tap **Remove account** at the prompt to remove the account and delete all its messages, contacts, and other data.

## Synchronizing Accounts



Select the items you want to synchronize on your account such as Books, Calendar, Contacts, and more.

1. From a Home screen, tap  → **Settings**.
2. Tap the account which is located in the **Accounts** section.
3. Tap the account name.

4. Tap **Sync now** to synchronize your account or tap **Sync all** to synchronize all your accounts. Tap **Cancel sync** to stop the synchronization.
5. Tap **Settings** to access your account settings.

## Motion


The Motion settings allow you to set up various Motion activation services. For more information on using gestures, see *“Using Gestures”* on page 34.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Motion**.
2. Tap the ON/OFF icon  at the top of your screen to activate Motion.
3. The following options are available. Tap an option to activate the feature. A checkmark is displayed.
  - **Pan to move icon:** Once enabled, touch and hold a desired application shortcut icon or widget on the screen. Once it detaches, move the device left or right to migrate it to a new location.
  - **Pan to browse images:** Once enabled, touch and hold a desired on-screen image to pan around it. Move the device left or right to pan vertically or up and down to pan horizontally around the large on-screen image.

- **Sensitivity settings:** allows you to access additional settings for Gyroscope calibration, Pan to move icon, and Pan to browse images.
- **Learn about motions:** provides additional help on using the different motions.
- **Palm swipe to capture:** Once enabled, you can capture any on-screen information swiping across the screen. In a single motion, press the side of your hand on the screen and swipe from left to right. The image is then copied to the clipboard.
- **Palm touch to mute/pause:** Once enabled, you can pause any on-screen video or mute any current sound by simply covering the screen with your hand. Once you remove your hand from the screen, the device goes back to normal by either continuing to play the current video or unmuting the current sound.
- **Learn about hand motions:** provides additional help on the hand motions such as Palm swipe to capture and Palm touch to mute/pause.

## Accessory Settings

This menu allows you to select the Audio output mode when using a car or desk dock.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Accessory**.
2. Tap **Audio output** to set your Audio output to Stereo or Surround.

## Date and time

This menu allows you to change the current time and date displayed.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Date and time**.

---

**Important!** Deactivate **Automatic date and time** to manually set the rest of the options.

---

2. Tap **Set date** and tap the up and down arrows to set the **Month**, **Day**, and **Year** then tap **Set**.
3. Tap **Set time** and tap the up and down arrows to set the **Hour**, **Minute**, and **PM/AM**, then tap **Set**.
4. Tap **Select time zone**, then tap a time zone.
5. Optional: Tap **Use 24-hour format**. If this is not selected the camera automatically uses a 12-hour format.
6. Tap **Select date format** and tap the date format type.


## Accessibility

Accessibility services are special features to make using the device easier for those with certain physical disabilities. Use the Accessibility settings to activate these services.

---

**Note:** You can download accessibility applications from Play Store and manage their use here.

---

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Accessory**.
2. Tap the **Auto-rotate screen** to automatically rotate the screen from landscape to portrait when you rotate your camera.
3. Tap the **Screen timeout** option to timeout the accessibility feature after a defined amount of time.
4. Tap the **Speak passwords** option to activate this feature which reads out password information.
5. Tap the **Accessibility shortcut** option to allow the accessibility shortcut under the device options to be used by pressing and holding the power key.
6. Tap the **TalkBack** option to activate the TalkBack feature.



---

**Note:** TalkBack, when installed and enabled, speaks feedback to help blind and low-vision users.

---

---

**Important!** TalkBack can collect all of the text you enter, except passwords, including personal data and credit card numbers. It may also log your user interface interactions with the device.

---

7. Tap the **Font size** field to change the size of the fonts used on the device within menus, options, etc. Choose from: Tiny, Small, Normal, Large, or Huge.
8. Tap the **Negative colors** field to reverse the display of on-screen colors from White text on a Black background to Black text on a White background.
9. Tap the **Text-to-speech output** field to adjust your text-to-speech settings. For more information, refer to “*Speech Settings*” on page 88.
10. Tap **Enhance web accessibility** if you want to allow apps to install scripts from Google that make their Web content more accessible. Tap **Allow**.

11. Tap the Mono audio field to enable stereo audio to be compressed into a single mono audio stream for use with a single earbud/earphone.
12. Tap the Turn off all sounds field to mute every sound made by the device during taps, selections, notifications, etc.
13. Tap the Tap and hold delay field to select a time interval for this action. Choose from: Short, Medium, or Long.



## Developer options

Use the Developer options to set options for application development.

---

**Warning!** The developer options are intended for development use only. They can cause errors to occur on your device and with the applications you have on it.

---

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Developer options**.
2. Tap the ON/OFF slider, located to the right of the Developer options field, to turn ON .
3. The following options are available:

- **Desktop backup password:** allows you to protect your desktop with a backup password ID.
- **Stay awake:** with the Stay awake option enabled, your screen will never sleep while you are charging the camera.
- **Protect SD card:** requires apps to ask your permission before accessing data on your SD card.
- **USB debugging:** allows debugging when the device is attached to a PC by a USB cable.
- **Allow mock locations:** used by developers when developing location-based applications.
- **Select app to be debugged:** allows developers to select a specific app to debug.
- **Wait for debugger:** specified apps must have debugger attached before executing.
- **Show touches:** Displays touch interactions on the screen.
- **Show pointer location:** Highlights the data that was touched on the screen.
- **Show layout boundaries:** displays clip bounds, margins, etc.
- **Show GPU view updates:** flashes views inside windows when drawn with GPU.
- **Show screen updates:** Areas of the screen flash when they update.
- **Window animation scale:** Configure the scale for animation (ranges from off to 10x).
- **Transition animation scale:** Configure the scale for transitioning when using animation (ranges from off to 10x).
- **Animator duration scale:** Configure the scale for duration when using animation (ranges from off to 10x).
- **Disable hardware overlays:** Assigns the work of redrawing to the GPU.
- **Force GPU rendering:** allows the use of 2D hardware accelerations in applications.
- **Strict mode:** Makes the screen flash when applications perform long operations on the main thread.
- **Show CPU usage:** Screen highlights the current CPU usage.
- **GPU rendering profile:** Uses a 2D acceleration in applications.
- **Enable traces:** Enables/disables on-screen tracing based on an available parameter.
- **Do not keep activities:** destroys every activity as soon as the application is closed.





- **Limit background processes:** sets the number of processes that can run in the background.
- **Show all ANRs:** displays a prompt when applications running in the background are not responding.

## About Device

This menu contains legal information, system tutorial information, and other device information such as the model number, firmware version, baseband version, kernel version, and software build number.

To access device information:

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **About device**.
2. The following information displays:
  - **Software update:** allows you to update your device software, if available. For more information, refer to “*Software Update*” on page 96.
  - **Status:** displays the battery status, the level of the battery (percentage), IP address, Wi-Fi MAC address, Bluetooth address, Serial number, Up time, and Device status.

- **Legal information:** This option displays information about Open source licenses as well as Google legal information. This information clearly provides copyright and distribution legal information and facts as well as Google Terms of Service, Terms of Service for Android-powered Phones, and much more pertinent information as a reference. Read the information and terms, then press  to return to the Settings menu.
- **Model number:** displays the device’s model number.
- **Android version:** displays the android version loaded on this handset.
- **Baseband version:** displays the baseband version loaded on this handset.
- **Kernel version:** displays the kernel version loaded on this handset.
- **Build number:** displays the software, build number.


---

**Note:** Baseband, kernel and build numbers are usually used for updates to the handset or support.

---

## Software Update

The Software Update feature enables you to use your device to connect to the network and upload any new device software directly to your camera. The camera automatically updates with the latest available software when you access this option.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **About device** → **Software update**.
2. Tap **Check for updates** and scroll to **Select your country** and tap **OK**.
3. Review the Terms and conditions and tap the **I accept all the terms above** checkbox. Tap **Confirm**.
4. The camera automatically updates the software (if available), otherwise, when the **Current software is up to date** prompt is displayed, tap **OK**.
5. When updating software, once the update file is downloaded, you can delay the update on the start screen by postponing it for a certain period of time. If you want to resume the update before the selected time, tap **Continue update**.

## Section 9: Connections

---

This section describes the various connections your camera can make including accessing the Internet with your Browser, Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, and Connecting your PC.

### Internet



The Browser is your access to the mobile web. This section explains how to navigate the Browser and introduces you to the basic features.

#### *Accessing the Mobile Web*

To access the Browser:

- From the Home screen, tap Internet .

#### *Navigating with the Browser*

1. To select an item, tap an entry.
2. To scroll through a website, sweep the screen with your finger in an up or down motion.
3. Sweep the screen left to right to move laterally across a web page.
4. To return to a previous page, press .
5. To move forward to a web page, press .


#### *Zooming in and out of the Browser*

There are several ways to Zoom in and out on your browser.

After tapping on a link or article, use one of these methods:

- **Double tap:** Quickly tap the screen twice on the web page to zoom in or out.
- **Pinching:** Sweep in opposite directions at the same time to zoom in or out (use a pinching-in or pinching-out motion).

#### *Browser Options*

1. From the home page, press  to access the following options:
  - **New window:** displays a new window so you can browse multiple URLs. For more information, refer to “Adding and Deleting Windows” on page 98.
  - **Add bookmark:** allows you to add a URL to your bookmark list
  - **Add shortcut to home screen:** allows you to add a shortcut to your Home screen.
  - **Share page:** allows you to share the page using Gmail or as a message.
  - **Find on page:** allows you to search in the current page.

- **Desktop view:** allows you to assign the browser to display the current page in the desktop view (to closely mimic the display as it would appear on a desktop computer).
- **Save for offline reading:** allows you to store the current page in memory so that it can be read later even if you lose your Internet connection.
- **Brightness:** allows you to set the screen brightness.
- **Downloads:** displays the download history.
- **Print:** allows you to print the screen or web page on a Samsung printer using Wi-Fi.
- **Settings:** allows you to modify your web settings. For more information, refer to “Browser Settings” on page 101.

### ***Enter a URL***

You can access a website quickly by entering the URL. Websites are optimized for viewing on your camera.

To enter a URL and go to a particular website, follow these steps:

1. Tap the **URL** field at the top of your screen.
2. Enter the URL using the on-screen keypad.  
The website displays.




### ***Search the Internet***

To perform an internet search using keywords, follow these steps:

1. From the Google homepage, tap the URL field.
2. Enter the keyword(s) to search using the on-screen keypad and tap **Go**.
3. Tap a link to view the website.

### ***Adding and Deleting Windows***

You can have up to eight Internet windows open at one time. To add a new window, follow these steps:

1. From your browser, press  → **New window**.  
A new browser window is opened.
2. Tap  (**Windows**) to see thumbnails of all open windows. The number displayed on the icon shows how many open windows you have.
3. Tap a window listing to open up that Internet window.
4. Tap  at the top right corner of the web page thumbnail to delete the window.

## Going Incognito



The incognito feature allows you to view Internet sites outside of the normal browsing. Pages viewed in this incognito window won't appear within your browser history or search history, and no traces (such as cookies) are left on your device.

---

**Note:** Any downloaded files will be preserved and will stay on your device after you exit the incognito mode.

---

### To add a new incognito window:



1. From your browser window, tap  (Windows) →  (Incognito page).
2. A new browser window displays.

---

**Note:** The incognito icon appears in the upper-left of the new browser window while you are in this mode.

---



### To exit from the incognito window:

1. From your browser window, tap  (Windows) →  (New window).
2. Scroll across the available windows and locate the incognito window.

3. Tap  next to the incognito listing to delete this window.

## Using Bookmarks

While navigating a website, you can bookmark a site to quickly and easily access it at a future time. The URLs (website addresses) of the bookmarked sites are displayed in the Bookmarks page. From the Bookmarks page you can also view your Most visited websites and view your History.

1. From the Home webpage, tap  (Bookmarks).  
The Bookmarks page is displayed.
2. Press  to display the following options:
  - **List/Thumbnail view:** Select **Thumbnail view** (default) to view a thumbnail of the webpage with the name listed, or select **List view** to view a list of the bookmarks with Name and URL listed.
  - **Create folder:** Creates a new folder in which to store new bookmarks.
  - **Change order:** Rearranges the current bookmarks.
  - **Move to folder:** Selected bookmarks are moved to a selected folder.
  - **Delete:** Erases selected bookmarks.

3. Tap a bookmark to view the webpage, or touch and hold a bookmark for the following options:

- **Open:** Opens the webpage of the selected bookmark.
- **Open in new window:** Opens the webpage in a new window.
- **Edit bookmark:** Allows you to edit the name or URL of the bookmark. For more information, refer to “Editing Bookmarks” on page 100.
- **Add shortcut to home screen:** Adds a shortcut to the bookmarked webpage to your camera’s Home screen.
- **Share link:** Allows you to share a URL address using many different options.
- **Copy link URL:** Allows you to copy the URL address to use in a message.
- **Delete bookmark:** Allows you to delete a bookmark. For more information, refer to “Deleting Bookmarks” on page 100.
- **Set as homepage:** Sets the bookmark to your new homepage.

### ***Adding Bookmarks***

1. From any webpage, tap  →  **Add**.
2. Use the on-screen keypad to enter the Name, Address, and the Location.
3. Tap **Save**.

4. **Saved to Bookmarks** will appear at the bottom of the page.

### ***Editing Bookmarks***

1. From the Bookmarks page, tap and hold the bookmark you want to edit.
2. Tap **Edit bookmark**.
3. Use the on-screen keypad to edit the Name, Address, and the Location.
4. Tap **Save**.


### ***Deleting Bookmarks***

1. From the Bookmarks page, tap and hold the bookmark you want to delete.
2. Tap **Delete bookmark**.
3. At the **Delete** confirmation window, tap **OK**.

### ***Emptying the Cookies***

A cookie is a small file which is placed on your camera by a website during navigation. In addition to containing some site-specific information, it can also contain some personal information (such as a username and password) which can pose a security risk if not properly managed. You can clear these cookies from your camera at any time.



1. From the Home webpage, press  → **Settings** → **Privacy and security** → **Clear all cookie data**.
2. At the Clear prompt, tap OK to delete the cookies or tap Cancel to exit.

### Using your History

The History list provides you with a list of the most recently visited websites. These entries can be used to return to previously unmarked web pages.

1. From the Home webpage, tap  **History** tab.  
A list of your most recently visited websites is displayed with Name and URL address.
2. Tap on a category such as **Today**, **Yesterday**, **Last 7 days**, or **Most visited**.
3. Tap any entry to display the webpage.
4. Press  → **Clear history** to delete the History list.

### Saved Pages

The Saved pages list provides you with a list of the websites that you have saved.

1. From the Home webpage, tap  → **Saved pages** tab.

A list of your saved webpages is displayed with Name and URL address. The webpages that have been visited the most will appear at the top.

2. Tap any entry to display the webpage.

1. Tap **Internet**  →  → **Settings**.

2. The following options are available:

General

- **Set home page:** Sets the current home page for the Web browser.
- **Form auto-fill:** allows you to fill in web forms with a single tap.
- **Auto-fill text:** allows you to enter text to be used in the Form auto-fill feature.

### Privacy and security

- **Clear cache:** Deletes all currently cached data. Tap OK to complete the process.
- **Clear history:** Clears the browser navigation history. Tap OK to complete the process.

- **Show security warnings:** Notifies you if there is a security issue with the current website.
- **Accept cookies:** Allows sites, that require cookies, to save and read cookies from your device.
- **Clear all cookie data:** Deletes all current browser cookie files.
- **Remember form data:** Allows the device to store data from any previously filled out forms. Remove the checkmark to disable this function.
- **Clear form data:** Deletes any stored data from previously filled out forms. Tap OK to complete the process.
- **Enable location:** Allows websites to request access to your location.
- **Clear location access:** Clears location access for all websites. Tap **OK** to complete the process.
- **Remember passwords:** Stores usernames and passwords for visited sites. Remove the checkmark to disable this function.
- **Clear passwords:** Deletes any previously stored usernames or passwords. Tap OK to complete the process.
- **Enable notifications:** Allows website notifications. Select Always on, On demand, or Off.

- **Clear notifications:** Deletes website notification access information.

### Accessibility

- **Force zoom:** allows you to override the website's request to control zoom.
- **Text size:** allows you to preview the text size, scale the text size using a slider bar, set the zoom amount on double tap, and minimize the font size using a slider bar.
- **Inverted screen rendering:** allows you to preview a website page, select Inverted rendering (black becomes white and vice versa), and adjust the Contrast using a slider bar.

### Advanced

- **Select search engine:** allows you to set your default search engine to Google, Yahoo!, or Bing.
- **Open in background:** New pages are launched in a separate page and displayed behind the current one. Remove the checkmark to disable this function.
- **Enable JavaScript:** Enables Javascript for the current Web page. Without this feature, some pages may not display properly. Remove the checkmark to disable this function.



- **Allow multiple tabs per app:** Allows you to use multiple navigation tabs per application.
- **Enable plug-ins:** Allows the download of plug-ins such as Adobe Flash.
- **Default storage:** Allows you to set your default storage to Device or Memory Card.
- **Website settings:** View advanced settings for individual websites.
- **Default zoom:** Adjusts the zoom feature. Set to Far, Medium, or Close.
- **Open pages in overview:** Shows an overview of newly opened web pages.
- **Auto-fit pages:** Allows web pages to be resized to fit as much of the screen as possible.
- **Block pop-ups:** Prevents popup advertisement or windows from appearing onscreen. Remove the checkmark to disable this function.
- **Text encoding:** Adjusts the current text encoding.
- **Reset to default:** Clears all browser data and resets all settings to default.

## Bandwidth management

- **Preload search results:** Allows the browser to preload high confidence search results in the background to help speed up searches.
- **Page preloading:** Allows the browser to preload pages in the background.
- **Load images:** Allows web page images to be loaded along with the other text components of a loaded website.

## Labs

- **Quick controls:** allows you to open quick controls and hide the app and URL bars by swiping your thumb from the left or right edge of the screen.
- **Full screen:** allows you to access Full screen mode and hide the status bar.

## Wi-Fi



### About Wi-Fi

Wi-Fi (short for "wireless fidelity" and sometimes referred to as wifi) is a term used for certain types of Wireless Local Area Networks (WLAN). These device types use an 802.11 wireless specification to transmit and receive wireless data. Wi-Fi communication requires access to an existing and accessible Wireless Access Point (WAP). These WAPs can


either be Open (unsecured) as within most Hot Spots, or Secured (requiring knowledge of the Router name and password).

### ***Turning Wi-Fi On***

By default, your device's Wi-Fi feature is turned off. Turning Wi-Fi on makes your device able to discover and connect to compatible in-range WAPs.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings**.
2. Tap the ON/OFF slider, located to the right of the Wi-Fi field, to turn Wi-Fi ON .

### ***Connect to a Wi-Fi Network***

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Wi-Fi**.  
The network names and security settings (Open network or Secured with WEP) of detected Wi-Fi networks are displayed in the Wi-Fi networks section.
2. Tap the network you want to connect to.

---

**Note:** When you select an open network, you will be automatically connected to the network.

---

3. Enter a wireless password if necessary.

### ***Manually add your new network connection***


1. Tap Add Wi-Fi network.
2. Enter the Network SSID. This is the name of your Wireless Access Point.
3. Tap the Security field and select a security option. This must match the current security setting on your target WAP.
4. If secured, you will also need to enter your WAP's password.
5. Tap Save to store the new information and connect to your target WAP.

---

**Note:** The next time your device connects to a previously accessed or secured wireless network, you are not prompted to enter the WAP key again, unless you reset your device back to its factory default settings.

---

### ***Turning Wi-Fi Off***


1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings**.
2. Tap the ON/OFF slider, located to the right of the Wi-Fi field, to turn Wi-Fi OFF

---

**Note:** The next time your device connects to a previously accessed or secured wireless network, you are not prompted to enter the WAP key again, unless you reset your device back to its factory default settings.

---

### **Manually Scan for a Wi-Fi Network**

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Wi-Fi**.
2. Tap **Scan**.

All available Wi-Fi networks are displayed.

### **Wi-Fi Status Indicators**

The following icons show your Wi-Fi connection status at a glance:



Displays when Wi-Fi is connected, active, and communicating with a Wireless Access Point (WAP).



Displays when Wi-Fi is active but there is a communication issue with the target Wireless Access Point (WAP).





Displays when connected to another device using Wi-Fi Direct. For more information, refer to “*Wi-Fi Direct*” on page 105.

### **Wi-Fi Advanced Settings**

The Advanced Wi-Fi menu allows you to set up many of your device’s Wi-Fi service, including:

- Network notification when an open network is available
- Setting your Wi-Fi sleep policy
- Checking for Wi-Fi Internet service
- Automatically connecting to a Wi-Fi hotspot when detected
- Specifying your Wi-Fi frequency band
- Viewing your device’s MAC and IP Address

To access the Advanced Wi-Fi menu:

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Wi-Fi**.
2. Tap  **Menu** → **Advanced**.

For more information, refer to “Advanced Wi-Fi Settings” on page 71.






### **Wi-Fi Direct**

Wi-Fi Direct allows device-to-device connections so you can transfer large amounts of data over a Wi-Fi connection.

---

**Note:** See your service plan for applicable charges for Wi-Fi Direct.

---

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings** → **Wi-Fi**.
2. Tap the ON/OFF slider, located to the right of the Wi-Fi field, to turn Wi-Fi ON .
3. At the top of the Wi-Fi screen, tap the **Wi-Fi Direct** button.
4. Repeat **steps 1 - 3** on the other device you want to connect with. The steps on a different device model may be different.
5. On your camera, tap **Scan**.  
The device scans for other Wi-Fi Direct devices.
6. Once the device you want to connect to is displayed, tap on it.
7. The other device has 2 minutes to tap **Accept** for the connection to be made.
8. Once connected, the other device will show as **Connected** in your list of Wi-Fi Direct devices and the  icon will display at the top of your screen.
9. To change your Device name, press  → **Rename device**.
10. For additional information about Wi-Fi Direct, press  → **Help**.

### ***Sharing Information with Connected Device***

To share Videos, Photos, or other information with the connected device, follow these steps:

1. View the information that you want to share. For example, if you want to share a photo, find the photo in your camera viewer or **My Files** folder, then tap the **Share**, **Share via**, or **Send via** option.
2. Tap the **Wi-Fi Direct** option.
3. Tap the connected device name. For example, **Android\_49ba**.
4. The other device will receive a prompt to receive the information and must tap **Accept**.
5. The file is transferred and the other device will receive a screen notification that a Wi-Fi file has been received. The file can be found in **My files** → **sdcard0** in the **ShareViaWifi** folder.

---

**Note:** Depending on the other device model, the prompts and shared folder information may differ.

---




## Bluetooth

### About Bluetooth



Bluetooth is a short-range communications technology that allows you to connect wirelessly to a number of Bluetooth devices, such as headsets and hands-free car kits, and Bluetooth-enabled handhelds, computers, printers, and wireless devices. The Bluetooth communication range is usually up to approximately 30 feet.

### Turning Bluetooth On and Off

#### To turn Bluetooth on:

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings**.
2. Tap the ON/OFF slider, located to the right of the Bluetooth field, to turn Bluetooth ON  .  
When active,  appears within the Status area.

#### To turn Bluetooth off:

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings**.
2. Tap the ON/OFF slider, located to the right of the Bluetooth field, to turn Bluetooth OFF  .

### Bluetooth Status Indicators

The following icons show your Bluetooth connection status at a glance:



Displays when Bluetooth is active.





Displays when Bluetooth is connected (paired) and communicating.

### Bluetooth Settings


The Bluetooth settings menu allows you to set up many of the characteristics of your device's Bluetooth service, including:

- Entering or changing the name your device uses for Bluetooth communication and description
- Setting your device's visibility (or "discoverability") for other Bluetooth devices
- Displaying your device's Bluetooth address


### To access the Bluetooth Settings menu:

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings**.
2. Verify your Bluetooth is ON .
3. Tap **Bluetooth**.


### To change your Bluetooth name:

1. From the Bluetooth settings page, press  → **Rename device**.
2. Enter a new name.
3. Tap **OK** to complete the rename process.

### To make your device visible:

1. From the Bluetooth settings page, press  → **Visible timeout**.
  - Making your device visible allows it to be detected by other devices for pairing and communication.
2. Select a time that you would like your device visibility to time-out.

### To show received files:

- From the Bluetooth settings page, press  → **Received files**.  
A list of all files received from Bluetooth is displayed.


### To scan for Bluetooth devices:

1. Verify your Bluetooth is active.
2. From the Bluetooth settings page, tap **Scan** to search for visible external Bluetooth-compatible devices such as headsets, devices, printers, and computers.

### *Pairing Bluetooth Devices*

The Bluetooth pairing process allows you to establish trusted connections between your device and another Bluetooth device. When you pair devices, they share a passkey, allowing for fast, secure connections while bypassing the discovery and authentication process.

To pair your device with another Bluetooth device:

1. Verify your Bluetooth is active.
2. Tap **Scan**. Your device will display a list of discovered in-range Bluetooth devices.
3. Tap a device from the list to initiate pairing.
4. Enter the passkey or PIN code, if needed, and tap **OK**.
5. The external device will then have to also accept the connection and enter your device's PIN code.  
Once successfully paired to an external device,  appears within the Status area.



---

**Note:** Due to different specifications and features of other Bluetooth-compatible devices, display and operations may be different, and functions such as transfer or exchange may not be possible with all Bluetooth compatible devices.

---

---

**Note:** Pairing between two Bluetooth devices is a one-time process. Once a pairing has been created, the devices will continue to recognize their partnership and exchange information without having to re-enter a passcode again.

---

### Disconnecting a paired device

Disconnecting a paired device breaks the connection between the device and your camera, but retains the knowledge of the pairing. At a later point when you wish to reconnect the device, there is no need to setup the connection information again.

1. Verify your Bluetooth is active.
2. From the Bluetooth settings page, tap the previously paired device (from the bottom of the page).

3. At the **Disconnect?** prompt, tap **OK** to confirm disconnection.


---

**Note:** Disconnections are manually done but often occur automatically if the paired device goes out of range of your camera or it is powered off.

---

### Deleting a paired device (unpair)

Deleting a device from your list removes its “connection record” and upon reconnection would require that you reenter all the previous pairing information.

1. Verify your Bluetooth is active.
2. From the Bluetooth settings page, tap  next to the previously paired device. This opens the connected device’s menu options.
3. Tap **Unpair** to delete the paired device.
4. Tap **Rename** to change the name of the paired device.
5. Tap **Call audio** to enable or disable call audio from the paired device.



## ***Sending Contacts via Bluetooth***

Depending on your paired devices' settings and capabilities, you may be able to send pictures, Contact information, or other items using a Bluetooth connection.

---

**Note:** Prior to using this feature, Bluetooth must first be enabled, and the recipient's device must be visible.

---

1. Verify your Bluetooth is active.
2. From the Home screen, tap  → **Contacts** .
3. Press  → **Import/Export** → **Send namecard via**.
4. Tap each contact that you would like to send via Bluetooth. A green checkmark will appear next to each entry you select.
5. Tap **Done**.
6. Tap **Bluetooth**.
7. Select the paired device to send the contacts to.

---

**Note:** The external Bluetooth device must be visible and communicating for the pairing to be successful.

---

8. A Bluetooth share notification will appear in your notifications list.

## **PC Connections**

You can connect your device to a PC using your PC data cable using various USB connection modes.

**Storage:** allows you to use the onboard storage capacity of the camera to store and upload files. This option allows your computer to detect the camera as a removable storage drive.

**Kies:** allows you to manage music, movies and photos. You can also backup precious contacts and calendars, download apps and podcasts and automatically upgrade device firmware. Kies conveniently syncs your life across all your devices.

---

**Note:** To sync your device to your PC, it is highly recommended that you install Samsung Kies which is available at <http://www.samsung.com/kies> (for Windows/Mac).

---



---

**Note:** If you are a Windows XP user, ensure that you have Windows XP Service Pack 3 or higher installed on your computer. Also, ensure that you have Samsung Kies 2.0 or Windows Media Player 10 or higher installed on your computer.

---

### Connecting as a Storage Device

You can connect your device to a PC as a removable disk and access the file directory. If you insert a memory card in the device, you can also access the files directory from the memory card by using the device as a memory card reader.

---

**Note:** The file directory of the memory card displays as a removable disk, separate from the internal memory.

---

1. Connect the USB cable to the device and connect the cable to the computer. After a few seconds, a pop-up window displays on the PC when connected.
2. On the PC pop-up, click **Open device to view files**.
3. You can now copy, move, create, delete, or organize files between your PC and the memory card.

## Section 10: Applications

---

This section contains a description of each application that is available in the Apps Menu, its function, and how to navigate through that particular application. If the application is already described in another section of this user manual, then a cross reference to that particular section is provided.

---

**Tip:** To open applications quickly, add the icons of frequently used applications to one of the Home screens. For details, see “*Customizing Your Home Screen*” on page 38. You can also add an application icon as a Primary Shortcut that will display on all Home screens. If you add an application as a primary shortcut, the application icon will not be displayed in the Apps menu. For more information, refer to “Adding and Removing Primary Shortcuts” on page 39.

---

### AllShare Play

This application wirelessly synchronizes your Samsung device with your TV, streams content, and even keeps tabs on who calls or sends text messages with real-time, on-screen monitoring. Samsung’s AllShare makes staying connected easy.

AllShare Play allows users to share their in-device media content with other external devices using DLNA certified™ (Digital Living Network Alliance) Devices. These external devices must also be DLNA-compliant. Wi-Fi capability can be provided to TVs via a digital multimedia streamer.

#### AllShare Definitions:

##### AllShare

This uses the traditional DLNA technology for sharing multimedia (photos, videos, or music) to your Samsung Smart TV and other DLNA devices.

##### AllShare Play

This new feature builds on the previous AllShare feature. It includes features such as Web storage integration and social networking integration. This is a Web service that requires using a Samsung account.

## AllShare Play/Group Cast

A subset feature of AllShare Play, this allows you to mirror photos and multimedia presentations with other members of your current Wi-Fi group. Users must be on the same Wi-Fi and provide an access code to join the group.

## AllShare Cast (with Hub accessory)

This feature functions with an external Wi-Fi AllShareCast Hub connected to a TV. It allows you to fully mirror what is currently displayed on your device to the external TV.

---



**Important!** You must first connect both of your communicating devices to the same Wi-Fi and be using an active/registered Samsung account prior to using this application. For more information, refer to “*Wi-Fi Settings*” on page 71. For more information, refer to “*Creating a Samsung Account*” on page 12.

---

---

**Important!** The Samsung account manages the access information (username/password) to several applications, such as AllShare Play, ChatON, and Media Hub.

---

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **AllShare Play** . The AllShare Play screen is displayed.
2. If prompted, read the on-screen message about network charges and tap **OK** to continue and return to the main AllShare Play screen.
3. Tap **Start** and follow the on-screen prompts.

The application contains two separate streaming media options:

- **Registered Storage:** allows you to receive and playback media stored externally (server, laptop, etc.) directly on your device by allowing you to add a Web storage service for streaming content.
- **Registered Devices:** allows you to stream/share selected multimedia content from your device to DLNA compliant device connected to the same Wireless Access Point.

## Configuring AllShare Settings

The AllShare Play™ application must first be configured prior to its initial use. You must setup parameters such as connected Wi-Fi, Items to share, source server address, and external device acceptance rights.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **AllShare Play** .
2. Press  and then tap **Settings** and configure the following settings as desired:
  - **Registered Storage:** allows you to add a Web storage location. Without a storage service/location added, you will not be able to use AllShare Play.
  - **Registered Devices:** defaults to your camera. This indicates the source of the streaming images and videos. Use the main screen to add more external devices.
  - **Setting up web services:** allows you to set up external Web services by signing in to external sites such as Facebook, Twitter, YouTube, etc.
  - **Auto upload:** allows you to setup automatic upload of images from your device to those storage locations specified within the Web storage list.
  - **Video quality settings:** allows you to setup the video quality for streamed video content.



- **Lock AllShare Play:** allows you to restrict access to AllShare Play by requiring a user enter the currently active and associated Samsung account password. Tap **Locking AllShare Play** to activate/deactivate the feature.
- **Language:** allows you select a display language.
- **About:** displays application information.
- **Contact Support:** allows you to contact the AllShare team via a new email from an available email account.

## Sharing Media via AllShare Play to a Target Device


---

**Important!** Make sure all communicating devices are connected to the same Wi-Fi.

---

1. Launch AllShare on the target device (such as an Internet TV, Samsung Tablet, etc.).
2. From the Home screen, tap  → **AllShare Play** .
3. Tap your device name from the **Devices** list.
4. Tap an available category tab (Pictures, Music, Movies, Files, or Info) and select a file.
  - Touch and hold to select multiple files.


- A file with **N** in the upper-left indicates it is stored remotely on a web storage location. Selecting this media causes your device to access the file currently stored on your services' servers.

5. Tap an available on-screen file, image, or video to place a green check mark alongside it.
6. Tap  (**Stream to connected devices**) to begin streaming the selected files.
7. On a target device (ex: Internet TV) select the onscreen Allow button to continue.

---

**Note:** At this stage your device is requesting access to share media with the external source.

---





8. Confirm  (**AllShare Controller enabled**) appears in the Notification area at the top of the device to indicate you are using your device as the media source.

## *AllShare Play Screen Sharing via Group Cast*

---

**Important!** Verify all of your recipients are connected to the same Wi-Fi.

---

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Gallery** .
2. Tap  →  **Group Play**.
3. If prompted, read the on-screen notification and tap **OK** to continue and return to the main AllShare Play screen.
4. Enter a security PIN and tap **Done**. This process makes sure only desired recipients can view your shared image.
5. Re-enter you PIN and tap **Done**. The device then waits for other connected recipients to accept the connection and enter the PIN on their screens.  
— or —  
Tap **Start Group Cast anyway** to continue the process while your users connect.

You can now interact and draw with the on-screen image, users will instantaneously see the same gestures and also be able to interact.





---

**Note:** The newly altered image (with markups and comments) can not be saved, but you can take a screen shot of the current image and save it to your Clipboard. For more information, refer to “Using Gestures” on page 34.


---

## Calculator

With this feature, you can use the camera as a calculator. The calculator provides the basic arithmetic functions; addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division. The Calculator also keeps a history of recent calculations.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Calculator** .
2. Enter the first number using the on-screen numeric keys.
3. Enter the operation for your calculation by tapping the corresponding on-screen arithmetic function key.
4. Enter the second number.
5. To view the result, tap equals (=).
6. To view calculator history, tap  located at the top of the calculator buttons. A history of your past calculations is displayed. Tap  again to display the calculator keypad.

7. To clear the calculator history, press  → **Clear history**.



8. To change the text size, press  → **Text size**. Tap Small, Medium, or Large.

9. Turn your camera sideways to the landscape position to display the scientific calculator.

## Calendar

With the Calendar feature, you can consult the calendar by day, week, or month, create events, and set an alarm to act as a reminder, if necessary.


To access the Calendar:

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Calendar** .
2. In in the portrait position, tap **(Show More)** to display these tabs:
  - **Year:** displays the Year view.
  - **Month:** displays the Month view.
  - **Week:** displays the Week view.
  - **Day:** displays the Day view.
  - **List:** displays the List view.
  - **Task:** allows you to search for tasks.



3. Tap  (**Create event**) to create a new Calendar event.
4. Tap **Today** to display the current date indicated by a blue box.
5. Tap **Calendars** to select the calendar options that you want displayed.
6. Press  and select one of the following options:
  - **Go to**: displays a specific date.
  - **Delete**: allows you to delete All events, All events before today, or an individual event.
  - **Search**: allows you to search within your current events.
  - **Sync**: allows you to synchronize your calendar with one or all of your accounts. This option only appears when an account has been opened.
  - **Settings**: displays a list of configurable settings.

## Calendar Settings

1. From any Calendar view, press  → **Settings**.
2. Tap **Month view styles** and select an option.
3. Tap **Week view** and select a type: **Timeline** or **Analog**.

4. Tap **First day of week** and select either **Local default**, **Saturday**, **Sunday** or **Monday**.
5. Tap **Hide declined events** to activate this option. A check mark indicates selection.
6. Tap **Lock time zone** (to lock event time based on your current user-selected time zone). Select a time zone from within the **Select time zone** field.
7. Tap **Show week number** to display the week numbers along the side of the week entries.
8. Tap **Calendars** and select the type of general synchronization settings you want. A check mark indicates selection.
9. Tap **Set alerts & notifications** to adjust the event notification method. Choose from: **Alert**, **Status bar notification**, and **Off**.
10. Tap **Select ringtone** to assign a ringtone to a calendar event notification.
11. Tap **Vibration** to set the Event notification tone to vibrate.
12. Tap **Default reminder time** to assign a default time frame for event reminders.

13. Tap **Notifications while screen is off** to display notifications on the full screen while it is turned off.
14. Tap **Quick responses** to select quick responses to emailing guests.
15. Tap **Swipe with two fingers** to change the way events are displayed when swiped.

## Camera



Use your 16.0 megapixel camera feature to produce photos in a JPEG format. Your camera also functions as a Camcorder to take videos. For more information, refer to “*Camera Operation*” on page 14.

## ChatON

With the ChatON application, you can interact with friends and family with text, images, hand-written notes and video shared instantly. You can chat in groups, while a Web client will allow the easy sharing of content and conversations between your camera and PC. For more information, refer to “*ChatON*” on page 70.

## Chrome

The Google Chrome app allows you to use the Google Chrome web browser on your camera.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Chrome** .






2. Read the Google Chrome Terms of Service and tap **Accept and Continue**.
3. If you have an existing Chrome account, tap **Sign in** to bring your open tabs, bookmarks, and omnibox data from your computer to your camera, otherwise tap **No thanks**.
4. Follow the on-screen instructions to use Google Chrome.

## Clock

The Clock application allows you to access alarms, view the World Clock, set a stopwatch, and use a timer.

## Alarm

This feature allows you to set an alarm to ring at a specific time.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Clock**  → **Alarm** → **Create alarm** . The following options display:
  - **Time:** tap  (**Up**) or  (**Down**) to set the new time for the alarm to sound. Tap AM or PM.




- **Alarm repeat:** use this option to set the repeating status for the alarm by tapping one the days that you want the alarm to sound. Tap the Repeat weekly checkbox to have the alarm repeat weekly.
- **Alarm type:** sets the way in which the alarm sounds when activated (Melody, Vibration, Vibration and melody, and Briefing).
- **More:** displays the following additional options:
  - **Alarm volume:** drag the slider to adjust the alarm's volume.
  - **Alarm tone:** sets the sound file which is played when the alarm is activated. Select an option or tap Add for additional options.
  - **Snooze:** use this option to set a Duration (3, 5, 10, 15, or 30 Minutes) and Snooze repeat (1, 2, 3, 5, or 10 Times). Tap the ON/OFF slider to activate.
  - **Smart alarm:** tracks body movements and calculates the best time for sounding the alarm. Place the camera somewhere on your bed then the camera's movement sensor (also known as accelerometer) is sensitive enough to work from any part of the bed. Set the Duration and the Tone. Tap the ON/OFF slider to activate.


- **Name:** allows you to use a specific name for the alarm. The name will appear on the display when the alarm activates.

2. Tap **Save** to store the alarm details.

### Turning Off an Alarm




- To stop an alarm when it sounds, touch and sweep the  icon to the right.

### Setting the Snooze Feature

- To activate the Snooze feature after an alarm sounds, touch and sweep the  icon to the left. Snooze must first be set in the alarm settings. For more information, refer to "Alarm" on page 118.

### Deleting Alarms

To delete an alarm, follow these steps:

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Clock**  → **Alarm** →  → **Delete**.
2. Tap the alarm or alarms you wish to delete. A green checkmark will appear next to each selection. Tap **Select all** to delete all alarms.
3. Tap **Delete**.

## World Clock

World Clock allows you to view the time of day or night in other parts of the world. World Clock displays time in hundreds of different cities, within all 24 time zones around the world.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Clock**  → **World Clock**. The clock for your time zone is displayed.
2. Tap **Add city** to add another city to the World Clock.
3. Scroll through the list of cities to find the city you want to add, or tap the Search bar and use the keypad to enter a city to search for.
4. Tap the city you want to add. The clock for that city will display.
5. To set Daylight Savings time, press and hold a city, then tap **DST settings**.
6. Select **Automatic**, **Off**, or **1 hour**.
7. If Daylight Savings Time is selected, a sun symbol on the World Clock listing will appear.



## Deleting a World Clock Entry

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Clock**  → **World Clock** →  → **Delete**.

2. Press and hold the city clocks you wish to delete.
3. Tap **Delete**.



## Stopwatch

You can use this option to measure intervals of time.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Clock**  → **Stopwatch**.
2. Tap **Start** to start the stopwatch and tap **Lap** to mark a unit of time per lap.
3. Tap **Stop** to stop the stopwatch.
4. Tap **Restart** to continue or tap **Reset** to erase all times recorded.

## Timer



You can use this option to set a countdown timer. Use a timer to count down to an event based on a preset time length (hours, minutes, and seconds).

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Clock**  → **Timer**.
2. Tap the **Hours** field to set hours if desired. As you tap different fields, they will become highlighted.
3. The **Minutes** field is highlighted and set to 1 minute. Use the keypad to set the number of minutes you want.



4. Tap the **Seconds** field to set seconds.
5. Tap **Start** to begin the timer and tap **Stop** to pause the timer.
6. After stopping, tap **Restart** to continue or tap **Reset** to set the timer back to the original setting.

## Desk clock


You can use the Desk clock when you have a desk dock and you want your camera to display the time, day, date, location, and weather conditions when it is docked.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Clock**  → **Desk clock**.

The default Desk clock is displayed.

2. Tap  to display the Desk clock in full-screen mode.
3. To make changes, tap  → **Settings**.
4. The following options are displayed while in full-screen mode:

- **Hide status bar**: when this is checked, the status bar is hidden from view.
- **Wallpaper**: tap to select Desk clock wallpaper from Default, Gallery, or Same as home screen.



- **Calendar**: when this is checked, the calendar is displayed. Tap to uncheck.
- **Weather**: when this is activated, the location, temperature, and weather condition is displayed. Touch and slide the slider to the right to turn it on .

## Contacts

You can manage your daily contacts by storing their name and number in your Address Book. For more information, refer to “Contacts and Your Address Book” on page 50.

## Downloads

The Downloads application allows you to manage all of your downloads from the Play Store and the Browser.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Downloads** .
- All of your downloads are listed.
2. Tap the **Internet downloads** tab to see all of the downloads you have made from the Browser.
3. Tap the **Other downloads** tab to see all other downloads.
4. Tap **Sort by size** to see your downloads sorted in size order.

5. Tap **Sort by date** to see your downloads sorted in time order.

## Dropbox

Dropbox provides access to your personal computer files directly from your device. It allows you to take your files with you when you are on the go, edit files in your Dropbox from your device, upload photos and videos to Dropbox, and share your selected files freely with family and friends.

The in-device application works together with a partner program placed on a target computer using an active Internet connection.

Dropbox creates a folder that automatically synchronizes its contents across all of your connected devices on your account. Update a file to your dropbox on your computer, and it is automatically updated to the same folder on your other devices.

## Download the Desktop Application

1. Use your computer's browser to navigate to:  
<http://www.dropbox.com/>.
2. Follow the on-screen instructions to install this application on your target computer containing the desired files.

---

**Important!** The computer application must be installed on the computer containing the desired files and that computer must have an active Internet connection.



---

---

**Note:** It might be necessary to configure your router's firewall settings to allow this application to gain access to the Internet.

---

## Accessing Dropbox On Your Device

1. From a Home screen, touch  **Apps**  
→  **Dropbox**.
2. Follow the on-screen instructions.

## Email

Email enables you to review and create email using various email services. You can also receive message alerts when you receive an important email. For more information, refer to “*Using Email*” on page 66.

## Gallery

The Gallery is where you view photos and play back videos. For photos, you can also perform basic editing tasks, view a slideshow, set photos as wallpaper or contact image, and share as a picture message. For more information, refer to “*Gallery*” on page 63.

## Game Hub

Access social and premium games. Join Game Hub to enjoy free games with your friends.

1. From a Home screen, touch  **Apps**  
→  **Game Hub**.

A Disclaimer screen displays.

2. Read the Disclaimer and touch **Confirm**.

3. Touch  **Menu** to display the following options:

- **Uninstall:** Touch this option to uninstall a previously installed game.
- **Legal notices:** Displays Game Hub legal information.

4. Touch a game and follow the on-screen instructions.

## Gmail

Gmail is a web-based email service. Gmail is configured when you first set up your camera. Depending on your synchronization settings, Gmail can automatically synchronize with your Gmail account on the web. For more information, refer to “*Using Gmail*” on page 68.

## Google



The Google Search application is the same on-screen Internet search engine that is on the Google Search Bar on your main Home screen. For more information, refer to “*Google Search Bar*” on page 33.

## Google +

Google+ makes messaging and sharing with your friends a lot easier. You can set up Circles of friends, visit the Stream to get updates from your Circles, use Messenger for fast messaging with everyone in your Circles, or use Instant Upload to automatically upload videos and photos to your own private album on Google+. For more information, refer to “*Google +*” on page 69.

## Google Settings

The Google Settings application provides a quick access to all your Google applications and settings.

1. From a Home screen, touch  **Apps** →  **Google Settings**.
2. Choose from the following options and follow the onscreen instructions.
  - Google+
  - Apps with Google+ Sign-In
  - Maps & Latitude
  - Location
  - Search
  - Ads



## Group Play

This application lets you share documents, photos or music in real-time with other connected friends.



---

**Important!** To share a Group Play, all users must be connected to the same Wi-Fi access point.

---

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Group Play** .
2. Read the various on-screen information and tap **Next** to continue.
3. Follow the on-screen tutorials.

## To share a picture with other Group Play users:



1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Group Play** .
2. Tap the available Wi-Fi indicated at the top and verify you are connected to an active Wi-Fi. This must be the same Wi-Fi being used by your external recipients.
3. Tap **Share Picture** and then select a image by placing a green checkmark on it and tapping **Done**.
4. Enter a PIN code and tap **Done** (to secure you session). Pass this PIN along to all your recipients.
5. Your recipients must then:
  - Launch the Group Cast feature on their device.
  - Tap the active Group Cast session (shown at the bottom of the application screen).
  - Your recipients must enter the PIN code you created for the session.

You can now interact and draw with the on-screen image, users will instantaneously see the same gestures and also be able to interact.



### Help

Use this app to learn more about your camera, change important settings, use key applications, and link to product videos.

1. From a Home screen, touch  **Apps** →  **Help**.
2. Touch a topic on the left side of the screen to view information on the right side of the screen.

### Instagram



Instagram is a fun way to share your life with friends through pictures. Snap a photo with your camera, then choose a filter to transform the image into a great picture. For more information, refer to “*Instagram*” on page 65.

### Internet

Open the web browser to start surfing the web. The browser is fully optimized and comes with advanced functionality to enhance the Internet browsing feature on your camera. For more information, refer to “*Internet*” on page 97.

### Local

Local is an application that uses Google Maps and your location to help you find Restaurants, Cafes, Bars, Attractions, and other businesses. You can also add your own locations.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Local** .
2. Tap on one of the business categories to search for a particular business.  
All of the business categories that are close to you will be displayed.
3. Tap on a business that you want to see the details for.
4. The business details such as address, phone, website, and location are displayed. You can also see reviews from around the web and from Google users.

### Maps

Depending on your location, you can view basic, custom, and satellite maps and local business information, including locations, contact information, and driving directions. You can also post public messages about a location and track your friends.



---

**Important!** Before using Google Maps you must have at least an active data (3G) connection. The Maps application does not cover every country or city.

---

## Enabling a Location Source

Before you use Google Maps and find your location or search for places of interest, you must enable a location source. To enable the location source you must enable the wireless network, or enable the GPS satellites.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Settings**  → **Location services**.
2. Tap the **Use GPS satellites** field. A green checkmark will display next to the field.

---



**Note:** Selecting **Use GPS satellites** allows you to locate places of interest at the street-level. However, this also requires a clear view of the sky and uses more battery power.

---

To receive better GPS signals, avoid using your device in the following conditions:

- inside a building or between buildings
- in a tunnel or underground passage
- in poor weather
- around high-voltage or electromagnetic fields
- in a vehicle with tinted windows

## Using Maps

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Maps** .  
A map will display with your location in the very center.
2. Follow the on-screen instructions to use the Maps application.

## Messenger

Messenger allows you to bring groups of friends together into a simple group conversation. When you get a new conversation in Messenger, Google+ sends an update to your camera. For more information, refer to “Messenger” on page 70.



## Music Player

Music Player allows you to play music files that you have stored on your device and memory card. You can also create playlists. For more information, refer to “Music Player” on page 59.

## My Files

My Files allows you to manage your sounds, images, videos, bluetooth files, Android files, and other memory card data in one convenient location.



1. From the Home screen, tap  → **My Files**  → **All files**.
2. Tap **sdcard0** to see the contents of your internal SD card.

---

**Note:** Different folders may appear depending on how your camera is configured.

---

3. The following folders may display:

- **Alarms:** this folder contains any alarm files you may have.
- **Android:** the Android folder stores files that are used in Android applications.
- **Application:** this folder contains app info for S Memo.
- **Bluetooth:** this folder stores files sent via a Bluetooth device.
- **DCIM:** this is the default location for pictures and videos taken by the device. Tap **DCIM → Camera** to view the picture or video files. For more information, refer to “*Viewing Pictures*” on page 63. Also, see “*Viewing Videos*” on page 64.
- **Download:** this folder contains downloads you have made.
- **Movies:** this folder contains your Video and Movie files.
- **Music:** this folder contains your Music files.

- **Notifications:** this folder contains all of the notifications you have received.
- **Pictures:** this folder contains your photos and screenshots.
- **Podcasts:** this folder contains all of your podcasts.
- **Ringtones:** this folder contains any ringtones you have purchased.
- **Samsung:** this folder contains Samsung Videos, Images, and Music.

4. If you have an external SD card inserted, tap **extSdCard** to see the contents of your external SD card (memory card).

## Navigation

Navigation is an internet-connected GPS navigation system with voice guidance. You can type or speak your destination.

---

**Note:** For voice-guided navigation, you need to install text-to-speech support from the Play Store.



---

To receive better GPS signals, avoid using your device in the following conditions:


- inside a building or between buildings
- in a tunnel or underground passage

- in poor weather
- around high-voltage or electromagnetic fields
- in a vehicle with tinted windows

### **Launching Navigation**

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Navigation** .
2. Read the Navigation information page and tap **Accept** to continue or **Don't accept** to exit.
3. Select one of the following options:
  - **Speak destination:** allows you to speak your destination.
  - **Type destination:** allows you to use the keypad to enter your destination.
  - **Go home:** takes you to your home address. The first time you are prompted to enter it.
  - **Map:** takes you to the map location of your present location using GPS.

### **Navigation Options**



- The map displays with your location in the center.  
Press  for the following options:
  - **Set Destination:** displays the Choose Destination screen where you can speak or type your destination.

- **Search:** allows you to speak or type a destination, place, or service to search for.
- **Layers:** are additional items that you can have displayed on your map. They include:
  - **Traffic view:** displays real-time traffic conditions so you can plan the fastest route.
  - **Satellite:** allows you to see the map as a satellite image.
  - **Parking:** allows you to see registered parking areas.
  - **Gas stations:** allows you to see registered gas stations.
  - **ATMs & banks:** allows you to see registered ATMs and Banks.
  - **Restaurants:** allows you to see registered restaurants.
- **Exit Navigation:** exits the Navigation application and returns you to the Application Menu screen.
- **Settings:** includes the following options:
  - **Screen Dimming:** set this option to dim the screen between instructions in order to conserve battery power.
  - **Terms, privacy & notices:** displays Terms and Conditions for Google mobile products, the Google Privacy Policy, and Google legal notices.
- **Help:** takes you to the Google Mobile Help web page.

## Obtaining Driving Directions

Your camera's built-in GPS hardware allows you to get realtime driving directions to selected locations or establishments based on your current location.

## Using a Physical Address

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Navigation** .
2. Tap either **Speak Destination** or **Type Destination**.
3. If typing in the address, enter the address, City, and State using the keypad. As you type, possible addresses will be displayed. Tap on one when you see the address you want.  
The route will be displayed.
4. If speaking the address, the Voice guidance screen is displayed. For voice-guided navigation you need to install text-to-speech support from the Play Store. Tap Install to install the application or tap **Skip** to exit.

---

**Note:** You will need to be signed on to your Google account before downloading applications from the Play Store. For more information, refer to *"Creating a New Google Account"* on page 12.

---

5. As you drive the route display will be updated and you will receive voice-guided navigation directions.

## Paper Artist

Paper Artist provides access to an in-device graphics program. You can start from an empty canvas or import a picture from your Gallery to get you started.



1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Paper Artist** .
2. Follow the on-screen instructions.

## Photo Wizard

Allows you to edit your photos. For more information, refer to *"Photo Wizard"* on page 64.



## Play Books

With Google Play Books, you can find more than 3 million free e-books and hundreds of thousands more to buy in the eBookstore.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Play Books** .
2. Log on to your Google account. For more information, refer to *"Creating a New Google Account"* on page 12.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions for using the Play Books application.

## Play Magazines

With Google Play Magazines, you can subscribe to your favorite magazines and have them available to read on your camera at any time or any place.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Play Magazines** .
2. Log on to your Google account if you have not already done so. For more information, refer to “*Creating a New Google Account*” on page 12.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions to subscribe to a magazine.

## Play Movies & TV

With Google Play Movies & TV, you can rent thousands of different movies and television shows. You can watch instantly, or download your movie or show for offline viewing at a later time. For more information, refer to “*Play Movies & TV*” on page 63.


## Play Music

With Google Play Music, you can play music that you have added to your music file as well as any music you copied from your PC. While offline, you can listen to music you have copied from your PC. For more information, refer to “*Google Play Music*” on page 62.

## Play Store

Play Store provides access to downloadable applications and games to install on your camera. Play Store also allows you to provide feedback and comments about an application, or flag an application that might be incompatible with your camera.



Before using the Play Store you must have a Google Account. For more information, refer to “*Using Gmail*” on page 68.



1. From the main Home screen, tap **Play Store** .
2. Sign in to your Google account.
3. The first time you sign in, the Play Store Terms of Service will be displayed. Tap **Accept** to continue or **Decline** to exit.
4. Tap **Apps, Games**, to download or purchase games or applications. You can also download updates to existing applications.

5. Follow on the on-screen instructions.



## S Memo


### Creating a New Memo

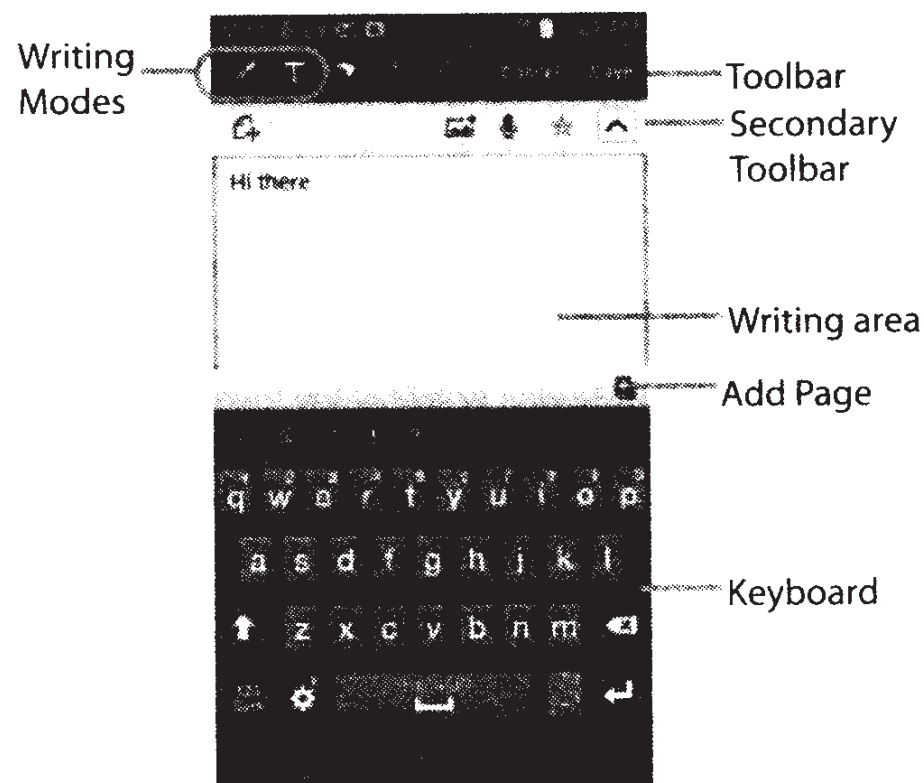
1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (S Memo). The S Memo screen is displayed.
2. Tap an existing Memo to open it then tap the screen to enter edit mode.  
— or —

Tap  to start a new memo in text mode with the keypad displayed or tap  to start a new memo in drawing mode using your finger or a compatible on-screen writing tool. You can change back and forth in a memo to add text with the keypad and the pen.












### Creating a New Memo

1. From the Home screen, tap  (Apps) →  (S Memo). The S Memo screen is displayed.
2. Tap an existing Memo to open it then tap the screen to enter edit mode.  
— or —

Tap  to start a new memo in text mode with the keypad displayed or tap  to start a new memo in drawing mode using your finger or a compatible on-screen writing tool. You can change back and forth in a memo to add text with the keypad and the pen.



The icons that you see displayed on the screen are described in the following table:

	Saves the current memo and creates a new one.
	Changes the view mode.
	Allows you to add free-format drawing.
	Displays the keypad to you can add text.
	Eraser tool allows you to erase marks and drawings.
	Undo the last action.
	Redo the last action that was undone.
	Make a voice recording to add to the memo.
	Hide the secondary toolbar.
	Show the secondary toolbar.
	Add an additional page to the memo.

3. Press  to access the following options:

---

**Note:** Depending on whether you have saved the memo, are in keypad mode, or in handwriting mode, the options will appear differently. The following is a list of the options you may see.

---

- **Share via:** allows you to share your memo as either a JPG, PDF or TXT via ChatON, Dropbox, Flipboard, Picasa, Google+, Bluetooth, Wi-Fi Direct, Messaging, Gmail, or Email.
- **Export:** allows you to save the memo to your Gallery as either a JPG or as a PDF.
- **Save as:** allows you to save the memo with a different name.
- **Add tag:** allows you to set tags to add in searches.
- **Change background:** allows you to set the background for your memo. Swipe the screen to the left or right to select a background and then tap **Done**.
- **Set as:** allows you to set a memo as a contact icon, Home screen wallpaper, or Lock screen wallpaper.
- **Print:** allows you to print the screen or web page on a Samsung printer using Wi-Fi.

When you are finished creating your memo, tap Save on the top menu bar.





## S Suggest

This application provides on-screen recommendations for applications that are specifically supported and made for use on your device.

---



**Note:** Access to this feature requires that you already be logged in to your Samsung account application. For more information, refer to “*Creating a Samsung Account*” on page 12.

---

1. From the Home screen, tap  →  **S Suggest**.
2. Read the terms and conditions.
3. Place a check mark in the **Agree** field then tap **Agree**.
4. Select an application from one of the available categories (Picks, Categories, Games, Friends, and Info).
5. Follow the on-screen download and installation instructions.

## S Voice

With the S Voice application you can use your voice to perform operations that you would normally have to do by hand such as texting a message, playing music, etc.

1. From the Home screen, tap  →  **S Voice**.
2. Read the Samsung Disclaimer then tap **Confirm** to continue.
3. Read the Vlingo Terms of Service then tap **Agree** to continue.
4. Read the information on the **About S Voice** screen, then tap **Next**.
5. Read the information on the **Say what you want** screen, then tap **Next**.
6. Read the information on the **Wake up S Voice** screen, then tap **Next**.
7. Read the information on the **Edit what you said** screen, then tap **Next**.
8. Read the information on the **Help** screen, make a selection and tap **Finish**.
9. At the S Voice screen, say “Hi Galaxy” to wake up S voice.
10. Speak into the microphone and follow the on-screen instructions.

## Samsung Apps

Connect to Samsung Apps and make your smart device even smarter. Simply and easily download an abundance of applications to your camera such as games, news, reference, social networking, navigation, and more.

- From a Home screen, touch  **Apps**  
→  **Samsung Apps.**

## Settings

This widget navigates to the settings for your camera. It includes such settings as: display, security, memory, and any extra settings associated with your camera. For more information, refer to “*Changing Your Settings*” on page 71.

## Talk

Google Talk is a free Windows and web-based application for instant messaging offered by Google. Conversation logs are automatically saved to a Chats area in your Gmail account. This allows you to search a chat log and store them in your Gmail accounts. For more information, refer to “*Google Talk*” on page 69.

## Video Editor



Allows you to edit your videos. For more information, refer to “*Video Editor*” on page 64.

## Video Player

The Video Player application plays video files stored on your memory card. For more information, refer to “Video Player” on page 62.

## Voice Search

The Google Voice Search application allows you to search the web using only your voice.




1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Voice Search** .
2. When the Google Voice Search screen displays, speak the word or words that you would like to search for on the internet.
3. If the timer expires and the mic icon changes from red to gray, tap the mic icon and speak the word or words that you would like to search for on the internet. Results are displayed on your camera.
4. The following options are available at the bottom of your screen:
  - **Web:** After selecting a different option, tap Web to return to the original search results.
  - **Images:** Displays images for your search.



- **Places:** Displays places and businesses in your local area pertaining to your search.
- **More:** After tapping More, sweep your screen to the left to see additional options such as News, Shopping, Videos, Blogs, Discussions, and Books.

## Weather

Allows you to set the widget to find your current position to show the weather conditions.

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **Weather** .
2. Tap **Enable** to find the current location or Cancel to enter a Search to **Find current location**.
3. Tap a location that is displayed.
4. Press  **Settings to access the following options:**
  - General**
    - **Unit:** allows you to set the temperature unit to **Fahrenheit** or **Celsius**.
    - **Enable current location:** tap the checkbox to allow the current location to be recognized.
    - **Auto scrolling:** allows you to set the scrolling time. Choose from None, Every 5 seconds, or Every 10 seconds.

- **Auto refresh:** allows you to set the Auto refresh setting. Choose from None, Every 1 hour, Every 3 hours, Every 6 hours, Every 12 hours, and Every 24 hours.

### Event notifications

- **New year:** allows you to enable and display the New year.
  - **My birthday:** allows you to enable and display My birthday.
  - **Contacts' birthdays:** allows you to enable and display your Contacts' birthdays.
5. Tap the **More** option to launch the AccuWeather.com application. Follow on-screen instructions.
  6. Tap the **Weather map** option to display surrounding cities' current weather conditions.





## YouTube

YouTube™ is a video sharing website on which users can upload and share videos. The site is used to display a wide variety of user-generated video content, including movie clips, TV clips, and music videos, as well as video content such as video blogging, informational shorts and other original videos.

---

**Note:** YouTube is a data-intensive feature. It is recommended that you upgrade to a large data plan to avoid additional data charges.

---

1. From the Home screen, tap  → **YouTube** .
2. Tap the search field  to search for specific videos, scroll down to browse through the main page thumbnails, or scroll to the bottom to explore additional options.
3. To view a video, tap an available preview thumbnail or tap the title link.
4. If you prefer high quality video, as the video starts to play, tap **HQ**.
5. Tap  to go to your camcorder so you can take your own videos. For more information, refer to “Using the Camcorder” on page 20.

---

**Note:** It is not necessary to sign in to the YouTube site to view content. However, if you wish to sign in to access additional options, access the page via the Web browser and tap **Sign in** at the bottom left corner. Enter your YouTube or Google username and password, and tap **Sign in**.

---

## Section 11: Health and Safety Information

---

This section outlines the safety precautions associated with using your Galaxy Camera. The terms “GALAXY” or “mobile device” are used in this section to refer to your Galaxy Camera. Read this information before using your mobile device.

### Exposure to Radio Frequency (RF) Signals

Although GALAXY is not a cell phone, it can operate on the same network as cell phones and can use the same Radio Frequency (RF) signals to communicate with the network as a cell phone. Therefore, although the following information refers specifically to RF exposure from wireless phones, it may apply similarly to GALAXY when it is being used on a cell phone network.

The U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has published information for consumers relating to Radio Frequency (RF) exposure from wireless phones. The FDA publication includes the following information:

### *Do cell phones pose a health hazard?*

Many people are concerned that cell phone radiation will cause cancer or other serious health hazards. The weight of scientific evidence has not linked cell phones with any health problems.

Cell phones emit low levels of Radio Frequency (RF) energy. Over the past 15 years, scientists have conducted hundreds of studies looking at the biological effects of the radio frequency energy emitted by cell phones. While some researchers have reported biological changes associated with RF energy, these studies have failed to be replicated. The majority of studies published have failed to show an association between exposure to radio frequency from a cell phone and health problems.

The low levels of RF cell phones emit while in use are in the microwave frequency range. They also emit RF at substantially reduced time intervals when in the stand-by mode. Whereas high levels of RF can produce health effects (by heating tissue), exposure to low level RF that does not produce heating effects causes no known adverse health effects.

The biological effects of radio frequency energy should not be confused with the effects from other types of electromagnetic energy.

Very high levels of electromagnetic energy, such as is found in X-rays and gamma rays, can ionize biological tissues. Ionization is a process where electrons are stripped away from their normal locations in atoms and molecules. It can permanently damage biological tissues including DNA, the genetic material.

The energy levels associated with radio frequency energy, including both radio waves and microwaves, are not great enough to cause ionization of atoms and molecules.

Therefore, RF energy is a type of non-ionizing radiation.

Other types of non-ionizing radiation include visible light, infrared radiation (heat), and other forms of electromagnetic radiation with relatively low frequencies.

While RF energy does not ionize particles, large amounts can increase body temperatures and cause tissue damage. Two areas of the body, the eyes and the testes, are particularly vulnerable to RF heating because there is relatively little blood flow in them to carry away excess heat.

### **Research Results to Date: Is there a connection between RF and certain health problems?**

The results of most studies conducted to date say no. In addition, attempts to replicate and confirm the few studies that have shown a connection have failed.

The scientific community at large therefore believes that the weight of scientific evidence does not show an association between exposure to Radio Frequency (RF) from cell phones and adverse health outcomes. Still the scientific community has supported additional research to address gaps in knowledge. Some of these studies are described below.

#### **Interphone Study**

Interphone is a large international study designed to determine whether cell phones increase the risk of head and neck cancer. A report published in the International Journal of Epidemiology (June, 2010) compared cell phone usage for more than 5,000 people with brain tumors (glioma and meningioma) and a similar number of healthy controls. Results of this study did NOT show that cell phones caused brain cancer. In this study, most people had no increased risk of brain cancer from using cell phones. For people with the heaviest use of cell phones (an average of more than ½ hour per day, every day, for over 10 years) the study suggested a

slight increase in brain cancer. However, the authors determined that biases and errors prevented any conclusions being drawn from this data. Additional information about Interphone can be found at

[http://www.iarc.fr/en/media-centre/pr/2010/pdfs/pr200\\_E.pdf](http://www.iarc.fr/en/media-centre/pr/2010/pdfs/pr200_E.pdf).

Interphone is the largest cell phone study to date, but it did not answer all questions about cell phone safety. Additional research is being conducted around the world, and the FDA continues to monitor developments in this field.

### **International Cohort Study on Mobile Phone Users (COSMOS)**

The COSMOS study aims to conduct long-term health monitoring of a large group of people to determine if there are any health issues linked to long-term exposure to radio frequency energy from cell phone use. The COSMOS study will follow approximately 300,000 adult cell phone users in Europe for 20 to 30 years. Additional information about the COSMOS study can be found at

<http://www.ukcosmos.org/index.html>.

### **Risk of Brain Cancer from Exposure to Radio Frequency Fields in Childhood and Adolescence (MOBI-KIDS)**

MOBI-KIDS is an international study investigating the relationship between exposure to radio frequency energy from communication technologies including cell phones and brain cancer in young people. This is an international multicenter study involving 14 European and non-European countries. Additional information about MOBI-KIDS can be found at

[http://www.creal.cat/programes-recerca/en\\_projectes-creal/view.php?ID=39](http://www.creal.cat/programes-recerca/en_projectes-creal/view.php?ID=39).

### **Surveillance, Epidemiology, and End Results (SEER) Program of the National Cancer Institute**

The National Cancer Institute (NCI) actively follows cancer statistics in the United States to detect any change in rates of new cases for brain cancer. If cell phones play a role in risk for brain cancer, rates should go up, because heavy cell phone use has been common for quite some time in the U.S. Between 1987 and 2005, the overall age-adjusted incidence of brain cancer did not increase. Additional information about SEER can be found at

<http://seer.cancer.gov/>.



## **Cell Phone Industry Actions**

Although the existing scientific data do not justify FDA regulatory actions, the FDA has urged the cell phone industry to take a number of steps, including the following:

- Support-needed research on possible biological effects of RF for the type of signal emitted by cell phones;
- Design cell phones in a way that minimizes any RF exposure to the user; and
- Cooperate in providing users of cell phones with the current information on cell phone use and human health concerns.

The FDA also is working with voluntary standard-setting bodies such as the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE), the International Commission on Non-ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP), and others to assure that safety standards continue to adequately protect the public.

## ***Reducing Exposure: Hands-Free Kits and Other Accessories***

### **Steps to Reduce Exposure to Radio Frequency Energy**

If there is a risk from being exposed to radio frequency energy (RF) from cell phones - and at this point we do not know that there is - it is probably very small. But, if you are concerned about avoiding even potential risks, you can take a few simple steps to minimize your RF exposure.

- Reduce the amount of time spent using your cell phone;
- Use speaker mode or a headset to place more distance between your head and the cell phone.

### **Hands-Free Kits**

Hands-free kits may include audio or Bluetooth® headsets and various types of body-worn accessories such as belt-clips and holsters. Combinations of these can be used to reduce RF energy absorption from cell phones.

Headsets can substantially reduce exposure because the phone is held away from the head in the user's hand or in approved body-worn accessories. Cell phones marketed in the U.S. are required to meet RF exposure compliance requirements when used against the head and against the body.

Because there are no known risks from exposure to RF emissions from cell phones, there is no reason to believe that hands-free kits reduce risks. Hands-free kits can be used for convenience and comfort. They are also required by law in many states if you want to use your phone while driving.

### **Cell Phone Accessories that Claim to Shield the Head from RF Radiation**

Because there are no known risks from exposure to RF emissions from cell phones, there is no reason to believe that accessories which claim to shield the head from those emissions reduce risks. Some products that claim to shield the user from RF absorption use special phone cases, while others involve nothing more than a metallic accessory attached to the phone. Studies have shown that these products generally do not work as advertised. Unlike “hands-free” kits, these so-called “shields” may interfere with proper operation of the phone. The phone may be forced to boost its power to compensate, leading to an increase in RF absorption.

### ***Children and Cell Phones***

The scientific evidence does not show a danger to any users of cell phones from RF exposure, including children and teenagers. The steps adults can take to reduce RF exposure apply to children and teenagers as well.

- Reduce the amount of time spent on the cell phone;
- Use speaker mode or a headset to place more distance between the head and the cell phone.

Some groups sponsored by other national governments have advised that children be discouraged from using cell phones at all. For example, The Stewart Report from the United Kingdom made such a recommendation in December 2000. In this report, a group of independent experts noted that no evidence exists that using a cell phone causes brain tumors or other ill effects. Their recommendation to limit cell phone use by children was strictly precautionary; it was not based on scientific evidence that any health hazard exists.

Additional information on the safety of RF exposures from various sources can be obtained from the following organizations (updated 10/1/2010):

- FCC RF Safety Program:  
<http://www.fcc.gov/oet/rfsafety/>.

- Environmental Protection Agency (EPA):  
<http://www.epa.gov/radtown/wireless-tech.html>.
- Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA):  
<http://www.osha.gov/SLTC/radiofrequencyradiation/>.  
(Note: This web address is case sensitive.)
- National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH):  
<http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/>.
- World Health Organization (WHO):  
<http://www.who.int/peh-emf/en/>.
- International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection:  
<http://www.icnirp.de>.
- Health Protection Agency:  
<http://www.hpa.org.uk/Topics/Radiation/>.
- US Food and Drug Administration:  
<http://www.fda.gov/Radiation-EmittingProducts/RadiationEmittingProductsandProcedures/HomeBusinessandEntertainment/CellPhones/default.htm>.

## **Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)**

### **Certification Information**

Your wireless mobile device is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed and manufactured not to exceed the exposure limits for Radio Frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) of the U.S. Government.

These FCC RF exposure limits are derived from the recommendations of two expert organizations: the National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurement (NCRP) and the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE). In both cases, the recommendations were developed by scientific and engineering experts drawn from industry, government, and academia after extensive reviews of the scientific literature related to the biological effects of RF energy.

The RF exposure limit set by the FCC for wireless mobile devices employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR). The SAR is a measure of the rate of absorption of RF energy by the human body expressed in units of watts per kilogram (W/kg). The FCC requires wireless devices to comply with a safety limit of 1.6 watts per kilogram (1.6 W/kg).



Galaxy Camera meets the FCC Radio Frequency Emission Guidelines. Galaxy Camera has Body SAR levels that do not exceed FCC SAR limit of 1.6 W/kg.

SAR values for this camera are measured in reference to (hand) extremity and in simultaneous (multiple) transmitter conditions for each frequency band operation this camera supports.

The FCC limit for Hand SAR is 4.0 W/kg and is measured at an average of 10g.

Galaxy Camera has a Hand SAR level that does not exceed FCC SAR limit of 4.0 W/kg.

The FCC SAR limit incorporates a substantial margin of safety to give additional protection to the public and to account for any variations in measurements.

SAR tests are conducted using standard operating positions accepted by the FCC with the mobile device transmitting at its highest certified power level in all tested frequency bands.

Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR level of the mobile device while operating can be well below the maximum reported value. This is because the mobile device is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to

reach the network. In general, the closer you are to a wireless base station antenna, the lower the power output of the mobile device.

Before a new model mobile device is available for sale to the public, it must be tested and certified to the FCC that it does not exceed the SAR limit established by the FCC. Tests for each model mobile device are performed in positions and locations (e.g. near the body) as required by the FCC.

For typical operations, this mobile device has been tested and meets FCC SAR guidelines.

Use of other accessories may not ensure compliance with FCC RF exposure guidelines. The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorization for this mobile device with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF exposure guidelines. This device has a FCC ID number: A3LEKGC110 Model Number: EK-GC110 and the specific SAR levels for this device can be found at the following FCC website:

<http://www.fcc.gov/oet/ea/>.

The SAR information for this device can also be found on Samsung's website:

<http://www.samsung.com/sar>.

SAR information on this and other model mobile devices can be accessed online on the FCC's website through <http://transition.fcc.gov/oet/rfsafety/sar.html>. To find information that pertains to a particular model mobile device, this site uses the mobile device FCC ID number, which is usually printed somewhere on the case of the mobile device.

Once you have the FCC ID number for a particular mobile device, follow the instructions on the website and it should provide values for typical or maximum SAR for a particular mobile device. Additional SAR information can also be obtained at <http://www.fcc.gov/encyclopedia/specific-absorption-rate-sar-cellular-telephones>.

### **FCC Part 15 Information to User**

Pursuant to part 15.21 of the FCC Rules, you are cautioned that changes or modifications not expressly approved by Samsung could void your authority to operate the device. This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

### **Smart Practices While Driving**

#### **On the Road - Off the Device**

The primary responsibility of every driver is the safe operation of his or her vehicle.

Responsible drivers understand that no secondary task should be performed while driving whether it be eating, drinking, talking to passengers, or using a mobile device - unless the driver has assessed the driving conditions and is confident that the secondary task will not interfere with their primary responsibility. **Do not engage in any activity while driving a moving vehicle which may cause you to take your eyes off the road or become so absorbed in the activity that your ability to concentrate on the act of driving becomes impaired.** Samsung is committed to promoting responsible driving and giving drivers the tools they need to understand and address distractions.

**Check the laws and regulations on the use of mobile devices and their accessories in the areas where you drive. Always obey them. The use of these devices may be prohibited or restricted in certain areas. For example, only hands-free use may be permitted in certain areas.**

Before using your device, consider your circumstances. Let your sharing wait when driving conditions require.

Remember, driving comes first, nothing else!

Notice regarding legal restrictions on mounting this device in an automobile:

Laws in some states may prohibit mounting this device on or near the windshield of an automobile. In other states, the law may permit mounting this device only in specific locations in the automobile. Be sure to consult the state and local laws or ordinances where you drive before mounting this device in an automobile. Failure to comply with these restrictions could result in fines, penalties, or other damages.

Never mount this device in a manner that will obstruct the driver's clear view of the street and traffic.

**Never use wireless data services such as Web browsing or e-mail while operating a vehicle.**

**Never watch videos, such as a movie or clip, or play video games while operating a vehicle.**

For more information, go to <http://www.ctia.org>.

### **Battery Use and Safety**

The battery in GALAXY is not intended to be replaced by the consumer. If you believe the battery is damaged or needs to be replaced, take the GALAXY to a service center for inspection and replacement.

- **Do not let the GALAXY or battery come in contact with liquids.** Liquids can get into the GALAXY's circuits, leading to corrosion. Even when the GALAXY appears to be dry and appears to operate normally, the circuitry could slowly corrode and pose a

safety hazard. If the GALAXY and/or battery get wet, have them checked by your service provider or contact Samsung, even if they appear to be working properly.

- **Do not place your battery in or near a heat source.** Excessive heating can damage the GALAXY or the battery and could cause the GALAXY or the battery to explode. Do not dry a wet or damp battery with an appliance or heat source such as a microwave oven, hair dryer, iron, or radiator. Avoid leaving your GALAXY in your car in high temperatures.
- **Do not dispose of the GALAXY or the battery in a fire.** The GALAXY or the battery may explode when overheated.
- **Avoid dropping the GALAXY.** Dropping the GALAXY, especially on a hard surface, can potentially cause damage to the GALAXY. If you suspect damage to the GALAXY or battery, take it to a service center for inspection.
- **Never use any charger or battery that is damaged in any way.**

---

**Important!:** Use only Samsung-approved batteries, and recharge your battery only with Samsung-approved chargers which are specifically designed for your GALAXY.

---

## **WARNING!**

**Use of a non-Samsung-approved battery or charger may present a risk of fire, explosion, leakage, or other hazard.** Samsung's warranty does not cover damage to the GALAXY caused by non-Samsung-approved batteries and/or chargers.

- **Do not use incompatible batteries and chargers.** Some websites and second-hand dealers not associated with reputable manufacturers and carriers, might be selling incompatible or even counterfeit batteries and chargers. Consumers should purchase manufacturer or carrier-recommended products and accessories. If unsure about whether a replacement battery or charger is compatible, contact the manufacturer of the battery or charger.
- **Misuse or use of incompatible batteries and charging devices could result in damage to the equipment and a possible risk of fire, explosion, or leakage, leading to serious injuries, damages to your phone, or other serious hazard.**

## **Samsung Mobile Products and Recycling**

Samsung cares for the environment and encourages its customers to recycle Samsung mobile devices and genuine Samsung accessories.



Proper disposal of your mobile device and its battery is not only important for safety, it benefits the environment. Batteries must be recycled or disposed of properly. For more information about recycling your GALAXY, go to: <http://mobile.samsungusa.com/recycling/index.jsp> or call 1-800-822-8837 for more information. To find the nearest recycling location, go to: [www.samsung.com/recyclingdirect](http://www.samsung.com/recyclingdirect) or call 1-877-278-0799.

---

**Warning!:** Never dispose of batteries in a fire because they may explode.

---

### **UL Certified Travel Charger**

The Travel Charger for this mobile device has met applicable UL safety requirements. Please adhere to the following safety instructions per UL guidelines:

**FAILURE TO FOLLOW THE INSTRUCTIONS OUTLINED MAY LEAD TO SERIOUS PERSONAL INJURY AND POSSIBLE PROPERTY DAMAGE.**

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS - SAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS.**

### **DANGER - TO REDUCE THE RISK OF FIRE OR ELECTRIC SHOCK, CAREFULLY FOLLOW THESE INSTRUCTIONS.**

FOR CONNECTION TO A SUPPLY NOT IN NORTH AMERICA, USE AN ATTACHMENT PLUG ADAPTOR OF THE PROPER CONFIGURATION FOR THE POWER OUTLET.

THIS POWER UNIT IS INTENDED TO BE CORRECTLY ORIENTED IN A VERTICAL OR HORIZONTAL OR FLOOR MOUNT POSITION.

### **Display / Touch-Screen**

Please note the following information when using your mobile device:

#### **WARNING REGARDING DISPLAY**

The display on your mobile device is made of glass or acrylic and could break if your mobile device is dropped or if it receives significant impact. Do not use if screen is broken or cracked as this could cause injury to you.

## **WARRANTY DISCLAIMER: PROPER USE OF A TOUCH-SCREEN MOBILE DEVICE**

If your mobile device has a touch-screen display, please note that a touch-screen responds best to a light touch from the pad of your finger or a non-metallic stylus. Using excessive force or a metallic object when pressing on the touch-screen may damage the tempered glass surface and void the warranty. For more information, please refer to the “Standard Limited Warranty”.

## **GPS**

GALAXY can use a Global Positioning System (GPS) signal for location-based applications. A GPS uses satellites controlled by the U.S. Government that are subject to changes implemented in accordance with the Department of Defense policy and the 2008 Federal Radio navigation Plan (FRP). Changes may affect the performance of location-based technology on your mobile device.

## **Your Location**

Location-based information includes information that can be used to determine the approximate location of a mobile device. Mobile devices which are connected to a wireless network transmit location-based information. Additionally, if you use applications that require location-based information (e.g. driving directions), such applications transmit location-based information. The location-based information may be shared with third-parties, including your wireless service provider, applications providers, Samsung, and other third-parties providing services.

## **Navigation**

Maps, directions, and other navigation-data, including data relating to your current location, may contain inaccurate or incomplete data, and circumstances can and do change over time. In some areas, complete information may not be available. **Therefore, you should always visually confirm that the navigational instructions are consistent with what you see before following them. All users should pay attention to road conditions, closures, traffic, and all other factors that may impact safe driving or walking. Always obey posted road signs.**

## **Emergency Communication**

GALAXY should not be relied upon for essential communications (medical emergencies, calls to 911, or communications to emergency services). GALAXY is not designed or intended to be used for such communications. Voice Over Internet Protocol (VOIP) services which may be used on GALAXY to make phone calls do not support 911 calls and are only intended for talking with friends.

## **Care and Maintenance**

Your mobile device is a product of superior design and craftsmanship and should be treated with care. The suggestions below will help you fulfill any warranty obligations and allow you to enjoy this product for many years:

### **Keep your Samsung Mobile Device away from:**

#### **Liquids of any kind**

Keep the mobile device dry. Precipitation, humidity, and liquids contain minerals that will corrode electronic circuits. If the mobile device does get wet, do not accelerate drying with the use of an oven, microwave, or dryer, because this may damage the mobile device and could cause a fire or explosion. Do not use the mobile device with a wet hand.

Doing so may cause an electric shock to you or damage to the mobile device.

#### **Extreme heat or cold**

Avoid temperatures below 0°C / 32°F or above 45°C / 113°F.

#### **Microwaves**

Do not try to dry your mobile device in a microwave oven. Doing so may cause a fire or explosion.

#### **Dust and Dirt**

Do not expose your mobile device to dust, dirt, or sand.

#### **Cleaning solutions**

Do not use harsh chemicals, cleaning solvents, or strong detergents to clean the mobile device. Wipe it with a soft cloth slightly dampened in a mild soap-and-water solution.

#### **Shock or vibration**

Do not drop, knock, or shake the mobile device. Rough handling can break internal circuit boards.

#### **Paint**

Do not paint the mobile device. Paint can clog the device's moving parts or ventilation openings and prevent proper operation.

## Responsible Listening

---

### **Caution!: Avoid potential hearing loss.**

---

Damage to hearing occurs when a person is exposed to loud sounds over time. The risk of hearing loss increases as sound is played louder and for longer durations.

Prolonged exposure to loud sounds (including music) is the most common cause of preventable hearing loss. Some scientific research suggests that using portable audio devices, such as portable music players and cell phones, at high volume settings for long durations may lead to permanent noise-induced hearing loss. This includes the use of headphones (including headsets, earbuds, and Bluetooth® or other wireless devices).

Exposure to very loud sound has also been associated in some studies with tinnitus (a ringing in the ear), hypersensitivity to sound, and distorted hearing. Individual susceptibility to noise-induced hearing loss and potential hearing problem varies. Additionally, the amount of sound produced by a portable audio device varies depending on the nature of the sound, the device settings, and the headphones

that are used. As a result, there is no single volume setting that is appropriate for everyone or for every combination of sound, settings, and equipment.

You should follow some common sense recommendations when using any portable audio device:

- Always turn the volume down before plugging the earphones into an audio source.
- Set the volume in a quiet environment and select the lowest volume at which you can hear adequately.
- Be aware that you can adapt to higher volume settings over time, not realizing that the higher volume may be harmful to your hearing.
- When using headphones, turn the volume down if you cannot hear the people speaking near you or if the person sitting next to you can hear what you are listening to.
- Do not turn the volume up to block out noisy surroundings. If you choose to listen to your portable device in a noisy environment, use noise-cancelling headphones to block out background environmental noise. By blocking background environment noise, noise cancelling headphones should allow you to hear the music at lower volumes than when using earbuds.
- Limit the amount of time you listen. As the volume increases, less time is required before your hearing could be affected.



- Avoid using headphones after exposure to extremely loud noises, such as rock concerts, that might cause temporary hearing loss.  
Temporary hearing loss might cause unsafe volumes to sound normal.
- Do not listen at any volume that causes you discomfort. If you experience ringing in your ears, hear muffled speech, or experience any temporary hearing difficulty after listening to your portable audio device, discontinue use and consult your doctor.

You can obtain additional information on this subject from the following sources:

**American Academy of Audiology**

11730 Plaza American Drive, Suite 300  
Reston, VA 20190

Voice: (800) 222-2336

Email: [info@audiology.org](mailto:info@audiology.org)

Internet:

<http://www.audiology.org/Pages/default.aspx>

**National Institute on Deafness and Other Communication Disorders**

National Institutes of Health  
31 Center Drive, MSC 2320  
Bethesda, MD 20892-2320

Email: [nidcdinfo@nih.gov](mailto:nidcdinfo@nih.gov)

Internet:

<http://www.nidcd.nih.gov/>

**National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH)**

395 E Street, S.W., Suite 9200  
Patriots Plaza Building  
Washington, DC 20201

Voice: 1-800-35-NIOSH  
(1-800-356-4674)

1-800-CDC-INFO (1-800-232-4636)

Outside the U.S. 513-533-8328

Email: [cdcinfo@cdc.gov](mailto:cdcinfo@cdc.gov)

Internet:

<http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/topics/noise/default.html>

1-888-232-6348 TTY

### **Operating Environment**

Remember to follow any special regulations in force in any area, and always switch your mobile device off whenever it is forbidden to use it, or when it may cause interference or danger. When connecting the mobile device or any accessory to another device, read its user's guide for detailed safety instructions. Do not connect incompatible products.

### **Using Your Mobile Device Near Other Electronic Devices**

Most modern electronic equipment is shielded from Radio Frequency (RF) signals. However, certain electronic equipment may not be shielded against the RF signals from your wireless mobile device. Consult the manufacturer to discuss alternatives.

### **Implantable Medical Devices**

A minimum separation of six (6) inches should be maintained between a handheld wireless mobile device and an implantable medical device, such as a pacemaker or implantable cardioverter defibrillator, to avoid potential interference with the device.

Persons who have such devices:

- Should ALWAYS keep the mobile device more than six (6) inches from their implantable medical device when the mobile device is turned ON;
- Should not carry the mobile device in a breast pocket;
- Should use the ear opposite the implantable medical device to minimize the potential for interference;
- Should turn the mobile device OFF immediately if there is any reason to suspect that interference is taking place;
- Should read and follow the directions from the manufacturer of your implantable medical device. If you have any questions about using your wireless mobile device with an implantable medical device, consult your health care provider.

For more information see: <http://www.fcc.gov/oet/rfsafety/rffaq.html#>.

## **Other Medical Devices**

If you use any other personal medical devices, consult the manufacturer of your device to determine if it is adequately shielded from external RF energy. Your physician may be able to assist you in obtaining this information. Switch your mobile device off in health care facilities when any regulations posted in these areas instruct you to do so. Hospitals or health care facilities may be using equipment that could be sensitive to external RF energy.

## **Vehicles**

RF signals may affect improperly installed or inadequately shielded electronic systems in motor vehicles. Check with the manufacturer or its representative regarding your vehicle before using your mobile device in a motor vehicle. You should also consult the manufacturer of any equipment that has been added to your vehicle.

## **Posted Facilities**

Switch your mobile device off in any facility where posted notices require you to do so.

## **Potentially Explosive Environments**

Switch your mobile device off when in any area with a potentially explosive atmosphere and obey all signs and instructions. Sparks in such areas could cause an explosion or fire resulting in bodily injury or even death. Users are advised to switch the mobile device off while at a refueling point (service station).

Users are reminded of the need to observe restrictions on the use of radio equipment in fuel depots (fuel storage and distribution areas), chemical plants, or where blasting operations are in progress. Areas with a potentially explosive atmosphere are often, but not always, clearly marked. They include below deck on boats, chemical transfer or storage facilities, vehicles using liquefied petroleum gas (such as propane or butane), areas where the air contains chemicals or particles, such as grain, dust, or metal powders, and any other area where you would normally be advised to turn off your vehicle engine.

### **When your Device is Wet**

Do not turn on your device if it is wet. If your device is already on, turn it off and remove the battery immediately, if applicable (if the device will not turn off or you cannot remove the battery, leave it as-is). Then, dry the device with a towel and take it to a service center.

### **Restricting Children's Access to Your Mobile Device**

Your mobile device is not a toy. Do not allow children to play with it because they could hurt themselves and others, damage the mobile device, or use services that increase your mobile device bill.

Keep the mobile device and all its parts and accessories out of the reach of small children.

### **FCC Notice and Cautions**

#### **FCC Notice**

The mobile device may cause TV or radio interference if used in close proximity to receiving equipment. The FCC can require you to stop using the mobile device if such interference cannot be eliminated. Vehicles using liquefied petroleum gas (such as propane or butane) must comply with

the National Fire Protection Standard (NFPA-58). For a copy of this standard, contact the National Fire Protection Association.

#### **Cautions**

Any changes or modifications to your mobile device not expressly approved in this document could void your warranty for this equipment and void your authority to operate this equipment. Only use approved batteries, antennas, and chargers.

The use of any unauthorized accessories may be dangerous and void the mobile device warranty if said accessories cause damage or a defect to the mobile device. Although your mobile device is quite sturdy, it is a complex piece of equipment and can be broken. Avoid dropping, hitting, bending, or sitting on it.

### **Other Important Safety Information**

- Only qualified personnel should service the mobile device. Faulty service may be dangerous and may invalidate any warranty applicable to the device.
- Ensure that any mobile devices or related equipment used in your vehicle are securely mounted.
- Check regularly that all wireless mobile device equipment in your vehicle is mounted and operating properly.

- When using a headset in dry environments, static electricity can build up in the headset and cause a small quick static electrical shock. To minimize the risk of electrostatic discharge from the headset avoid using the headset in extremely dry environments or touch a grounded unpainted metal object to discharge static electricity before inserting the headset.
- Do not store or carry flammable liquids, gases, or explosive materials in the same compartment as the mobile device, its parts, or accessories.
- For vehicles equipped with an air bag, remember that an air bag inflates with great force. Do not place objects, including installed or portable wireless equipment near or in the area over the air bag or in the air bag deployment area. If wireless equipment is improperly installed and the air bag inflates, serious injury could result.
- Switch your mobile device off before boarding an aircraft. The use of wireless mobile devices in aircraft is illegal and may be dangerous to the aircraft's operation. Check with appropriate authorities before using any function of a mobile device while on an aircraft.
- Failure to observe these instructions may lead to the suspension or denial of network services to the offender, or legal action, or both.

- While using your device, leave some lights on in the room and do not hold the screen too close to your eyes.
- Seizures or blackouts can occur when you are exposed to flashing lights while watching videos or playing games for extended periods. If you feel any discomfort, stop using the device immediately.
- Reduce risk of repetitive motion injuries. When you repetitively perform actions, such as pressing keys, drawing characters on a touch screen with your fingers, or playing games, you may experience occasional discomfort in your hands, neck, shoulders, or other parts of your body. When using your device for extended periods, hold the device with a relaxed grip, press the keys lightly, and take frequent breaks. If you continue to have discomfort during or after such use, stop use and see a physician.
- If your device has a camera flash or light, do not use the flash or light close to the eyes of people or pets. [122011]



## Section 12: Warranty Information

---

### Limited Warranty To Original Purchaser

#### What is covered and for how long?

SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS AMERICA, INC.

("SAMSUNG") warrants that SAMSUNG's devices and accessories ("Products") supplied and distributed by SAMSUNG, delivered new and in the original carton, are free from defects in material and workmanship under normal use and service for the period commencing upon the date of purchase by the first consumer purchaser and continuing for the following specified period of time after that date:

Camera	1 Year
Batteries (Including Internal Batteries)	1 Year
Case	90 Days
Other Camera Accessories	1 Year

#### What is not covered?

This Limited Warranty is conditioned upon proper use of Product by Purchaser.

This Limited Warranty does not cover: (a) defects or damage resulting from accident, misuse, abnormal use, abnormal conditions, improper storage, exposure to liquid, moisture, dampness, sand or dirt, neglect, or unusual physical, electrical or electromechanical stress; (b) scratches, dents and cosmetic damage, unless caused by SAMSUNG; (c) defects or damage resulting from excessive force or use of a metallic object when pressing on a touch screen; (d) equipment that has the serial number or the enhancement data code removed, defaced, damaged, altered or made illegible; (e) ordinary wear and tear; (f) defects or damage resulting from the use of Product in conjunction or connection with accessories, products, or ancillary/peripheral equipment not furnished or approved by SAMSUNG; (g) defects or damage resulting from improper testing, operation, maintenance, installation, service, or adjustment not furnished or approved by SAMSUNG; (h) defects or damage resulting from external causes such as

collision with an object, fire, flooding, dirt, windstorm, lightning, earthquake, exposure to weather conditions, theft, blown fuse, or improper use of any electrical source; (i) defects or damage resulting from cellular signal reception or transmission, or viruses or other software problems introduced into the Product; or (j) Product used or purchased outside the United States. This Limited Warranty covers batteries only if battery capacity falls below 80% of rated capacity or the battery leaks, and this Limited Warranty does not cover any battery if (i) the battery has been charged by a battery charger not specified or approved by SAMSUNG for charging the battery; (ii) any of the seals on the battery are broken or show evidence of tampering; or (iii) the battery has been used in equipment other than the SAMSUNG Product for which it is specified.

### **What are SAMSUNG's obligations?**

During the applicable warranty period, provided the Product is returned in accordance with the terms of this Limited Warranty, SAMSUNG will repair or replace the Product, without charge to Purchaser, or at SAMSUNG's sole option, refund the purchase price.

SAMSUNG may, at SAMSUNG's sole option, use rebuilt, reconditioned, or new parts or components when repairing any Product, or may replace Product with a rebuilt, reconditioned, functionally equivalent or new Product. Repaired/replaced cases will be warranted for a period of ninety (90) days. All other repaired/replaced Products will be warranted for a period equal to the remainder of the original Limited Warranty on the original Product or for ninety (90) days, whichever is longer. All replaced Products, parts, components, boards and equipment shall become the property of SAMSUNG. This Limited Warranty is extended to the Purchaser and is not transferable or assignable to any other person or entity.

### **What must you do to obtain warranty service?**

To obtain service under this Limited Warranty, Purchaser must return the Product to an authorized Product service facility in an adequate container for shipping, accompanied by the sales receipt or comparable proof of sale showing the original date of purchase, the serial number of the Product and the seller's name and address.

To obtain assistance on where to deliver the Product, please call SAMSUNG Customer Care at 1-800-SAMSUNG. If SAMSUNG determines that any Product is not covered by this Limited Warranty, Purchaser must pay all parts, shipping, and labor charges for the repair or return of such Product. Purchaser should keep a separate backup copy of any contents of the Product before delivering the Product to SAMSUNG for warranty service, as some or all of the contents may be deleted or reformatted during the course of warranty service.

### **What are the limits on SAMSUNG's liability?**

THIS LIMITED WARRANTY SETS OUT THE FULL EXTENT OF SAMSUNG'S RESPONSIBILITIES, AND THE EXCLUSIVE REMEDY REGARDING THE PRODUCTS. ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ARE LIMITED TO THE DURATION OF THIS LIMITED WARRANTY.

IN NO EVENT SHALL SAMSUNG BE LIABLE FOR DAMAGES IN EXCESS OF THE PURCHASE PRICE OF THE PRODUCT OR FOR, WITHOUT LIMITATION, COMMERCIAL LOSS OF ANY SORT; LOSS OF USE, TIME, DATA, REPUTATION, OPPORTUNITY, GOODWILL, PROFITS OR REVENUE OR SAVINGS; FAILURE TO REALIZE SAVINGS OR OTHER BENEFITS; INCONVENIENCE;

INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR PUNITIVE DAMAGES; OR DAMAGES ARISING FROM THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PRODUCT. SOME STATES AND JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW LIMITATIONS ON HOW LONG AN IMPLIED WARRANTY LASTS, OR THE DISCLAIMER OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS AND DISCLAIMERS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

SAMSUNG MAKES NO WARRANTIES OR REPRESENTATIONS, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, STATUTORY OR OTHERWISE, AS TO THE QUALITY, CAPABILITIES, OPERATIONS, PERFORMANCE OR SUITABILITY OF ANY THIRD-PARTY SOFTWARE OR EQUIPMENT USED IN CONJUNCTION WITH THE PRODUCT, OR THE ABILITY TO INTEGRATE ANY SUCH SOFTWARE OR EQUIPMENT WITH THE PRODUCT, WHETHER SUCH THIRD-PARTY SOFTWARE OR EQUIPMENT IS INCLUDED WITH THE PRODUCT DISTRIBUTED BY SAMSUNG OR OTHERWISE. RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE QUALITY, CAPABILITIES, OPERATIONS, PERFORMANCE AND SUITABILITY OF ANY SUCH THIRD-PARTY SOFTWARE OR EQUIPMENT RESTS SOLELY WITH THE PURCHASER AND THE DIRECT VENDOR, OWNER OR SUPPLIER OF SUCH THIRD-PARTY SOFTWARE OR EQUIPMENT OR REVENUE



WITHOUT LIMITING THE FOREGOING, YOU ASSUME ALL RISK AND LIABILITY FOR LOSS, DAMAGE OR INJURY TO YOU AND YOUR PROPERTY AND TO OTHERS AND THEIR PROPERTY ARISING OUT OF THE USE, MISUSE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PRODUCT NOT CAUSED DIRECTLY BY THE NEGLIGENCE OF SAMSUNG. THIS LIMITED WARRANTY SHALL NOT EXTEND TO ANYONE OTHER THAN THE ORIGINAL PURCHASER OF THIS PRODUCT, IS NONTRANSFERABLE AND STATES YOUR EXCLUSIVE REMEDY.

Nothing in the Product instructions or information shall be construed to create an express warranty of any kind with respect to the Products. No agent, employee, dealer, representative or reseller is authorized to modify or extend this Limited Warranty or to make binding representations or claims, whether in advertising, presentations or otherwise, on behalf of SAMSUNG regarding the Products or this Limited Warranty.

This Limited Warranty gives you specific legal rights, and you may also have other rights that vary from state to state. If there is any inconsistency between this Limited Warranty to Original Purchaser and any other agreement or statement included with or relating to the Products or services, this Limited Warranty shall govern.

### **Severability**

If any portion of this Limited Warranty is held to be illegal or unenforceable, such partial illegality or unenforceability shall not affect the enforceability of the remainder of the Limited Warranty.

### ***Precautions for Transfer and Disposal***

If data stored on this device is deleted or reformatted using the standard methods, the data only appears to be removed on a superficial level, and it may be possible for someone to retrieve and reuse the data by means of special software.

To avoid unintended information leaks and other problems of this sort, it is recommended that the device be returned to Samsung's Customer Care Center for an Extended File System (EFS) Clear which will eliminate all user memory and return all settings to default settings. Please contact the **Samsung Customer Care Center** for details.

---

Important! Please provide warranty information (proof of purchase) to Samsung's Customer Care Center in order to provide this service at no charge. If the warranty has expired on the device, charges may apply.

---

Samsung Electronics America, Inc.

85 Challenger Road

Ridgefield Park, NJ 07660

Phone: 1-800-SAMSUNG

[www.samsung.com](http://www.samsung.com)

No reproduction in whole or in part allowed without prior written approval. Specifications and availability subject to change without notice. [111611]

## End User License Agreement for Software

IMPORTANT. READ CAREFULLY: This End User License Agreement ("EULA") is a legal agreement between you (either an individual or a single entity) and Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd. ("Samsung Electronics Co.") for

software, owned by Samsung Electronics Co. and its affiliated companies and its third party suppliers and licensors, that accompanies this EULA, which includes computer software and may include associated media, printed materials, "online" or electronic documentation ("Software").

**Samsung Electronics Co. is a separate company from the company that provides the limited warranty for this mobile device, Samsung Electronics America, Inc.**

This device requires the use of preloaded software in its normal operation. BY USING THE DEVICE OR ITS PRELOADED SOFTWARE, YOU ACCEPT THE TERMS OF THIS EULA. IF YOU DO NOT ACCEPT THESE TERMS, **DO NOT USE** THE DEVICE OR THE SOFTWARE. INSTEAD, RETURN THE DEVICE TO THE RETAILER FOR A REFUND OR CREDIT.

1. GRANT OF LICENSE. Samsung Electronics Co. grants you the following rights provided that you comply with all terms and conditions of this EULA: You may install, use, access, display and run one copy of the Software on the local hard disk(s) or other permanent storage media of one computer and use the Software on a single computer or a mobile device at a time, and you may not make the Software available over a network where it could be used by multiple computers at the same time. You may make one copy of the Software in machine readable form for backup purposes

only; provided that the backup copy must include all copyright or other proprietary notices contained on the original.

2. **RESERVATION OF RIGHTS AND OWNERSHIP.** Samsung Electronics Co. reserves all rights not expressly granted to you in this EULA. The Software is protected by copyright and other intellectual property laws and treaties. Samsung Electronics Co. or its suppliers own the title, copyright and other intellectual property rights in the Software. The Software is licensed, not sold.

3. **LIMITATIONS ON END USER RIGHTS.** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, or otherwise attempt to discover the source code or algorithms of, the Software (except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation), or modify, or disable any features of, the Software, or create derivative works based on the Software. You may not rent, lease, lend, sublicense or provide commercial hosting services with the Software.

4. **CONSENT TO USE OF DATA.** You agree that Samsung Electronics Co. and its affiliates may collect and use technical information gathered as part of the product support services related to the Software provided to you, if any.

Samsung Electronics Co. and its affiliates may use this information solely to improve their products or to provide customized services or technologies to you and will not disclose this information in a form that personally identifies you.

5. **UPGRADES.** This EULA applies to updates, supplements and add-on components (if any) of the Software that Samsung Electronics Co. may provide to you or make available to you after the date you obtain your initial copy of the Software, unless we provide other terms along with such upgrade. To use Software identified as an upgrade, you must first be licensed for the Software identified by Samsung Electronics Co. as eligible for the upgrade. After upgrading, you may no longer use the Software that formed the basis for your upgrade eligibility.

6. **SOFTWARE TRANSFER.** You may not transfer this EULA or the rights to the Software granted herein to any third party unless it is in connection with the sale of the mobile device which the Software accompanied. In such event, the transfer must include all of the Software (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, this EULA) and you may not retain any copies of the Software.

The transfer may not be an indirect transfer, such as a consignment. Prior to the transfer, the end user receiving the Software must agree to all the EULA terms.

7. EXPORT RESTRICTIONS. You acknowledge that the Software is subject to export restrictions of various countries. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the Software, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end user, end use, and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.

8. TERMINATION. This EULA is effective until terminated. Your rights under this License will terminate automatically without notice from Samsung Electronics Co. if you fail to comply with any of the terms and conditions of this EULA. Upon termination of this EULA, you must cease all use of the Software and destroy all copies, full or partial, of the Software.

9. Disclaimer of Warranty. ALL SOFTWARE PROVIDED BY SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO. WITH THIS MOBILE DEVICE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND ON AN "AS AVAILABLE" BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND FROM SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO., EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. TO THE FULLEST EXTENT POSSIBLE PURSUANT TO APPLICABLE

LAW, SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO. DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS, IMPLIED, OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY OR WORKMANLIKE EFFORT, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, RELIABILITY OR AVAILABILITY, ACCURACY, LACK OF VIRUSES, QUIET ENJOYMENT, NON INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS OR OTHER VIOLATION OF RIGHTS. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW EXCLUSIONS OR LIMITATIONS OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES, SO THE ABOVE EXCLUSIONS OR LIMITATIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. NO ADVICE OR INFORMATION, WHETHER ORAL OR WRITTEN, OBTAINED BY YOU FROM SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO. OR ITS AFFILIATES SHALL BE DEEMED TO ALTER THIS DISCLAIMER BY SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO. OF WARRANTY REGARDING THE SOFTWARE, OR TO CREATE ANY WARRANTY OF ANY SORT FROM SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO.

10. THIRD-PARTY APPLICATIONS. Certain third party applications may be included with, or downloaded to this mobile device. Samsung Electronics Co. makes no representations whatsoever about any of these applications. Since Samsung Electronics Co. has no control over such applications, you acknowledge and agree that Samsung Electronics Co. is not responsible for the availability of such



applications and is not responsible or liable for any content, advertising, products, services, or other materials on or available from such applications. You expressly acknowledge and agree that use of third party applications is at your sole risk and that the entire risk of unsatisfactory quality, performance, accuracy and effort is with you. It is up to you to take precautions to ensure that whatever you select to use is free of such items as viruses, worms, Trojan horses, and other items of a destructive nature. References on this mobile device to any names, marks, products, or services of any third-parties are provided solely as a convenience to you, and do not constitute or imply an endorsement, sponsorship, or recommendation of, or affiliation with the third party or its products and services. You agree that Samsung Electronics Co. shall not be responsible or liable, directly or indirectly, for any damage or loss caused or alleged to be caused by, or in connection with, use of or reliance on any such third party content, products, or services available on or through any such application. You acknowledge and agree that the use of any third-party application is governed by such third party application provider's Terms of Use, License Agreement, Privacy Policy, or other such agreement and that any information or personal data you provide, whether knowingly or unknowingly, to such third-party application provider, will

be subject to such third party application provider's privacy policy, if such a policy exists. SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO. DISCLAIMS ANY RESPONSIBILITY FOR ANY DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION OR ANY OTHER PRACTICES OF ANY THIRD PARTY APPLICATION PROVIDER.

11. Disclaimer of Warranty Regarding Third Party Applications. SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO. DOES NOT WARRANT OR MAKE ANY REPRESENTATIONS REGARDING THE AVAILABILITY, USE, TIMELINESS, SECURITY, VALIDITY, ACCURACY, OR RELIABILITY OF, OR THE RESULTS OF THE USE OF, OR OTHERWISE RESPECTING, THE CONTENT OF ANY THIRD PARTY APPLICATION WHETHER SUCH THIRD PARTY APPLICATION IS INCLUDED WITH THE PRODUCT DISTRIBUTED BY SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO., IS DOWNLOADED, OR OTHERWISE OBTAINED. USE OF ANY THIRD PARTY APPLICATION IS DONE AT YOUR OWN DISCRETION AND RISK AND YOU ARE SOLELY RESPONSIBLE FOR ANY DAMAGE TO THE MOBILE DEVICE OR LOSS OF DATA THAT RESULTS FROM THE DOWNLOADING OR USE OF SUCH THIRD PARTY APPLICATIONS. SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO. EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING WHETHER YOUR PERSONAL INFORMATION IS CAPTURED BY ANY THIRD PARTY APPLICATION PROVIDER OR THE USE TO WHICH SUCH PERSONAL INFORMATION MAY BE PUT BY

SUCH THIRD PARTY APPLICATION PROVIDER. ANY THIRD PARTY APPLICATIONS PROVIDED WITH THIS MOBILE DEVICE ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND ON AN "AS AVAILABLE" BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND FROM SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO., EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. TO THE FULLEST EXTENT POSSIBLE PURSUANT TO APPLICABLE LAW, SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO. DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS, IMPLIED, OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY OR WORKMANLIKE EFFORT, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, RELIABILITY OR AVAILABILITY, ACCURACY, LACK OF VIRUSES, QUIET ENJOYMENT, NON INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS OR OTHER VIOLATION OF RIGHTS. SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO. DOES NOT WARRANT AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE THIRD PARTY APPLICATION, THAT THE FUNCTIONS CONTAINED IN THE THIRD PARTY APPLICATION WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, THAT THE OPERATION OF THE THIRD PARTY APPLICATION WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR FREE, OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE THIRD PARTY APPLICATION WILL BE CORRECTED. YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR, OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW EXCLUSIONS OR

LIMITATIONS OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES, SO THE ABOVE EXCLUSIONS OR LIMITATIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. NO ADVICE OR INFORMATION, WHETHER ORAL OR WRITTEN, OBTAINED BY YOU FROM SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO. OR ANY OTHER PERSON OR ENTITY SHALL BE DEEMED TO ALTER THIS DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY REGARDING THIRD PARTY APPLICATIONS, OR TO CREATE ANY WARRANTY BY SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO.

12. Limitation of Liability. SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO. WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES OF ANY KIND ARISING OUT OF OR RELATING TO THE USE OR THE INABILITY TO USE THE SOFTWARE OR ANY THIRD PARTY APPLICATION, ITS CONTENT OR FUNCTIONALITY, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO DAMAGES CAUSED BY OR RELATED TO ERRORS, OMISSIONS, INTERRUPTIONS, DEFECTS, DELAY IN OPERATION OR TRANSMISSION, COMPUTER VIRUS, FAILURE TO CONNECT, NETWORK CHARGES, IN-APP PURCHASES, AND ALL OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES EVEN IF SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO. HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE EXCLUSIONS OR LIMITATIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

NOTWITHSTANDING THE FOREGOING, SAMSUNG ELECTRONIC CO.'S TOTAL LIABILITY TO YOU FOR ALL LOSSES, DAMAGES, CAUSES OF ACTION, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THOSE BASED ON CONTRACT, TORT, OR OTHERWISE, ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF THE SOFTWARE OR THIRD PARTY APPLICATIONS ON THIS MOBILE DEVICE, OR ANY OTHER PROVISION OF THIS EULA, SHALL NOT EXCEED THE AMOUNT PURCHASER PAID SPECIFICALLY FOR THIS MOBILE DEVICE OR ANY SUCH THIRD PARTY APPLICATION THAT WAS INCLUDED WITH THIS MOBILE DEVICE. THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS, EXCLUSIONS, AND DISCLAIMERS (INCLUDING SECTIONS 9, 10, 11 AND 12) SHALL APPLY TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.

13. U.S. Government End Users Restricted Rights. The Software is licensed only with "restricted rights" and as "commercial items" consisting of "commercial software" and "commercial software documentation" with only those rights as are granted to all other end users pursuant to the terms and conditions herein. All Products are provided only with "restricted rights" with only those rights as are granted to all other end users pursuant to the terms and conditions herein. All Software and Products are provided subject to Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR) 52.227.19.

14. APPLICABLE LAW. This EULA is governed by the laws of the State of New York without regard to conflicts of laws principles. This EULA shall not be governed by the UN Convention on

Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, the application of which is expressly excluded.

15. DISPUTE RESOLUTION.

If a dispute, controversy or difference is not amicably settled, it shall be finally resolved by arbitration in Seoul, Korea in accordance with the Arbitration Rules of the Korean Commercial Arbitration Board.

The award of arbitration shall be final and binding upon the parties.

16. ENTIRE AGREEMENT; SEVERABILITY. This EULA is the entire agreement between you and Samsung Electronics Co. relating to the Software and supersedes all prior or contemporaneous oral or written communications, proposals and representations with respect to the Software or any other subject matter covered by this EULA. If any provision of this EULA is held to be void, invalid, unenforceable or illegal, the other provisions shall continue in full force and effect.

[101212]

# Index

---

## A

- Abc mode** 46
- About Device** 95
- Accounts** 90
- Add accounts** 90
- Adding a New Contact**
  - Idle Screen 50
- Address Book** 50
  - Adding a New Contact 50
  - Adding Pauses to Contact Numbers 52
  - Deleting Address Book Entries 58
  - Favorites 58
  - Finding an Address Book Entry 52
  - Group Settings 56
  - Managing Address Book Contacts 58
- Address Book Options** 54
- Airplane mode** 73, 76
- Alarm** 118
- AllShare**
  - Definitions 112

- AllShare Cast** 75
- AllShare Play** 112
  - Configuring Settings 114
  - Group Cast 115
  - Sharing Media 114
- AllShareCast Hub** 113
- Applications**
  - Using the Camcorder 20
  - Using the Camera 14
  - World Clock 120
- Applications settings**
  - managing 79
  - running services 80

## B

- Back key** 33
- Battery**
  - charging 7
  - Installing 5
  - Low Battery Indicator 8
- Battery Use & Safety** 145
- Bigger Font**
  - Setting 93

- Blocking Mode** 76
  - On 76
- Bluetooth** 107
  - Sending contacts 110
- Books**
  - Play Books 129

## C

- Calculator** 116
- Calendar** 116
- Camcorder** 20
  - Settings 18
  - Shooting Video 20
- Camcorder Options**
  - Camcorder Options after a Video is Taken 21
- Camera** 14
  - Bottom View 24
  - icons 25
  - Modes 16
  - Quick Settings 17
  - Settings 18
  - Switching On/Off 9



- Taking Pictures 14
- Zoom feature 15
- Camera information** 95
- Camera Operation** 14
- Care and Maintenance** 149
- Changing Your Settings** 71
- Charging battery** 7
- ChatON** 70
- Children and Cell Phones** 141
- Clock** 81, 118
- Contacts** 50
- Cookies**
  - Emptying 100
- Creating a New Memo** 131
- Creating a Playlist** 61

**D**

- Desk clock** 121
- Developer options** 93
- Display**
  - icons 25
  - Using Negative Colors 93
- Display / Touch-Screen** 147
- Do cell phones pose a health hazard?**

- Downloads** 121
- Dropbox**
  - Desktop Application Download 122

## E

- Email** 66
  - Creating a Corporate Email Account 66
  - Creating Additional Email Accounts 67
  - Switching Between Email Accounts 67
- Entering Text** 45
  - Changing the Text Entry Mode 46
  - Using 123Sym Mode 47
  - Using Abc Mode 46
  - Using Swype 48
  - Using Symbol/Numeric Mode 47
- Exposure to Radio Frequency (RF) Signals** 137

## F

- FCC Notice and Cautions** 154
- Featured Apps** 123
- Font Size**

- Changing 93
- Format SD card** 44

## G

- Gallery** 63
  - viewing pictures 63
  - viewing videos 64
- Gestures**
  - Browse Image 35, 91
  - Overview 34
  - Screen Capture 35, 91
- Getting Started** 5
  - Setting Up Your Camera 5
- Gmail** 68
- Google Chrome** 118
- Google Maps** 125
- Google Play Music** 62
- Google Settings** 123
- Google Voice Typing** 48
- Google voice typing settings** 85
- GPS** 148
- Group**
  - Adding a contact 56
  - Editing 56
  - Removing a contact 56

**Group Cast** 115  
    Sharing Pictures 124

**Group Play** 124

**Group Settings**  
    Editing a Caller Group 56

## **H**

**Health and Safety Information** 137

**Home key** 33

## **I**

**Icons**  
    Application 27  
    Indicator 25

**Icons, description** 25

**Incognito** 99  
    Create Window 99  
    Exit Window 99

**Instagram** 65

**Internet** 97

## **J**

**Joining Contacts** 52

## **K**

**Keyboard Input Methods** 85

**Keyboard settings** 86

**Keypad**

    Changing Text Input 46

## **L**

**Landscape** 45

**Language and input** 85

**Language and keyboard settings**  
    select locale 85

**Local** 125

**Location services settings** 81

**Lock Screen**

    Clock 81  
    Dual Clock 82  
    Ripple Effect 82  
    Say Wake-Up Command 82  
    Weather 82

## **M**

**Maps** 125

**Memory Card** 43

**Memory Card Installation** 6

**Menu**

    key 33

**Menu Navigation** 33

**Messaging**

    Google Talk 69

    Using Email 66

    Using Gmail 68

**Messenger** 70

**microSD card** 6, 43

    Installing 6

    Removing 7

**microSDHC card** 6, 43

**Movies** 63

**Multimedia** 59

**Music File Extensions**

    3GP 59

    AAC 59

    AAC+ 59

    eAAC+ 59

    M4A 59

    MP3 59

    MP4 59

    WMA 59

**Music Player** 59

    adding music 61

    creating a playlist 61

    removing music 61

**My Files** 126

## **N**

**Navigation** 127  
    command keys 33  
    context-sensitive menus 34  
    terms used 33  
    touch gestures 33  
**Navigation Options** 128  
**Negative Colors** 93

## **O**

**Operating Environment** 152  
**Other Important Safety Information**  
    154  
**Owner information** 82

## **P**

**PC Connections** 110  
**Photo Wizard** 64  
**Pictures** 63  
    Gallery 63  
**Play Books** 129  
**Play Movies & TV** 63  
**Play Music** 62  
**Play Store** 130  
**Pointer speed** 88

## **Powering**

    Off 9  
    On 9

## **Privacy settings**

    factory data reset 89

## **Q**

**QWERTY keypad** 45

## **R**

## **Reducing Exposure**

    Hands-Free Kits and Other  
    Accessories 140

## **Reset**

    factory data 89

## **Responsible Listening** 150

**Restricting Children's Access to Your  
Mobile device** 154

## **Ripple** 82

## **Ripple Effect**

    Lock Screen 82

## **S**

## **S Memo** 131

    Creating a New Memo 131

## **S Suggest** 133

## **S Voice** 133

    Set Wake-Up Command 82

## **Samsung account** 10

**Samsung Mobile Products and  
Recycling**  
    146

**Screen Capture** 35, 91, 116

## **SD Card** 43

## **Security** 89

## **Security settings**

    device administration 83  
    trusted credentials 84

**Settings** 18, 71

## **Shortcuts** 25

**Smart network** 73

**Smart Practices While Driving** 144

## **Snooze** 119

**Software Update** 96

**Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)**

**Certification Information** 142

**Standard Limited Warranty** 156

## **Stopwatch** 120

## **SWYPE**

    entering text using 48

**Symbol/Numeric mode** 47

## **T**

**T9 Trace** 86

### **Text Input**

Abc mode 46

Methods 45

numeric mode 47

symbol mode 47

**Timer** 120

### **Touch Screen** 9

Lock/Unlock 9

### **Travel Charger** 7

Using 7

## **U**

**UL Certified Travel Charger** 147

### **Understanding Your Camera** 22

Bottom view 24

Features of Your Camera 22

Views 23

### **USB settings**

mass storage device 111

### **Using Bookmarks**

Adding Bookmarks 100

Deleting a Bookmark 100

Editing Bookmarks 100

## **V**

**Video Editor** 64

**Video Player** 62

**Volume** 76

**VPN** 74

Settings 74

## **W**

**Warranty Information** 156

**Weather** 135

Setting 82

**Web** 97

Entering Text in the Web Browser  
98

Navigating the Web 97

Using Bookmarks 99

**Wi-Fi** 103

using Kies via Wi-Fi 76

**Wi-Fi Direct** 105

**World Clock**

Deleting an Entry 120

**World clock** 120

## **Y**

**YouTube** 135

## **Z**

**Zoom** 15



AD68-08384A



**EK-GC200**

# Quick Reference Guide



## Auto

---

The device automatically detects the surroundings and controls various options that can affect the photograph to allow you to take the best shot for the current environment. This mode is suitable for general users, as the device controls most settings.

## Smart

---







Capture the moments you do not want to miss using various shooting modes. This mode helps you take the optimum shots in any environment where the photo is taken. Find out more details how to take photos in this user guide.

## Expert

---








Customise the options that affect the photography according to the environment where the photo is taken. This mode is suitable for advanced users, as the users are required to adjust the settings manually.








- **Program (P):** The device detects the shooting environment and automatically adjusts the shutter speed and aperture. This mode is suitable when taking general photos.
- **Aperture priority (A):** The device automatically adjusts the shutter speed according to the customised aperture setting. This mode is suitable when highlighting the subject and making it look more vivid by blurring the background.
- **Shutter priority (S):** The device automatically adjusts the aperture according to the customised shutter speed. This mode is suitable when taking photos of water gushing out of a fountain, or of a rapidly moving object.
- **Manual (M):** Manually adjust all options required to take photos.

Modes	Smart mode suggest	Beauty face	Best photo	Selfie alarm	Continuous shot	Best face
<b>Description</b>	<p>Take photos with one of the smart modes that the device automatically suggests.</p> <p>This mode is suitable for general users, as the device automatically suggests appropriate modes for a scene.</p>	<p>Brighten the skin tone of the subject to hide facial imperfections.</p> <p>This mode is suitable when taking portrait photos.</p>	<p>Take a series of consecutive photos of the subject, and select the best shot.</p> <p>This mode is suitable when taking photos of natural expressions.</p>	<p>The device detects a face in a preset area and automatically takes a series of consecutive photos. You can then select the best shot from the series.</p> <p>Use this mode to arrange a composition the way you want it and then take a photo of yourself.</p>	<p>Take a series of consecutive photos of a subject.</p> <p>This mode is suitable when taking photos of a moving subject, or changes of facial expression.</p>	<p>Take a series of consecutive photos of subjects, and then select your favourite shot by subject to create a best possible image.</p> <p>This mode is suitable when taking group photos.</p>
<b>Example photos</b> The actual photo may differ due to ambient light intensity and the shooting environment.						
<b>Remarks</b>					The device takes photos continuously while you are pressing the Shutter button down.	









The device automatically adjusts the settings, including aperture value, shutter speed, and ISO sensitivity, depending on the shooting environment.



Colour bracket	Kids shot	Landscape	Dawn	Snow	Macro	Food
<p>Take three photos consecutively with different colour effects applied.</p> <p>You can use this mode instead of choosing a colour effect to apply.</p>	<p>Take photos of kids while playing a funny sound to get their attention.</p> <p>This mode is suitable when taking photos of babies.</p>	<p>Take photos of the nature in vivid colours.</p> <p>This mode is suitable when taking photos of the outdoor scenery.</p>	<p>Take photos of the dawn sky in subtle colours.</p> <p>This mode is suitable when taking photos of the sky at the dawn.</p>	<p>Take brighter photos of snow scenery.</p> <p>This mode is suitable when taking photos in snowy winter scenes.</p>	<p>Take vivid photos of the subject at close range.</p> <p>This mode is suitable when taking photos of small objects, such as flowers and insects.</p>	<p>Take photos of food in more colourful tones.</p> <p>This mode is suitable when taking photos of food in restaurants.</p>
						

Modes	Party/Indoor	Action freeze	Rich tone(HDR)	Panorama	Waterfall	Animated photo	Drama
<b>Description</b>	Take crisp indoor photos. This mode is suitable when taking photos of well-lit indoor scenes.	Instantly take photos of a fast moving subject. This mode is suitable when taking photos of moving children or scenes in a sports game.	Take photos of the subject in softer and richer colour. This mode is suitable when taking vivid photos on a cloudy day.	Take photos of the panoramic view of a vast landscape in a single photo. This mode is suitable when taking photos of natural scenery.	Take photos of the dynamic movement of flowing water. This mode is suitable when taking photos of waterfalls or fountains.	Create a photo in which a few selected objects move by freezing or animating moving objects automatically detected by the camera. This mode is suitable when taking photos of a moving subject.	Take a series of photos and combine them to create an image that shows trails of the movement. This mode is suitable when taking photos of a moving subject.
<b>Example photos</b> The actual photo may differ due to ambient light intensity and the shooting environment.			 <div>Not used      Used</div>				
<b>Remarks</b>		Indoor photographs may appear dark. Taking photos outdoors is recommended.	The device takes multiple shots to produce images in softer and richer colours. Do not move the device until the photo has been taken.	Make sure to move the device in one direction.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The image may appear blurred because of the slow shutter speed when the device takes photos. Make sure to use a tripod.</li> <li>Taking photos with a long exposure in Manual (M) mode may saturate images.</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Take photos of a subject that is moving in one direction.</li> <li>Take photos with backgrounds that are free of moving objects.</li> </ul>

The device automatically adjusts the settings, including aperture value, shutter speed, and ISO sensitivity, depending on the shooting environment.

Eraser	Sound & shot	Interval	Silhouette	Sunset	Night	Fireworks	Light trace
<p>Take photos and erase moving objects in the background.</p> <p>This mode is suitable when taking photos in public places.</p>	<p>Take photos with a few seconds of audio recorded.</p> <p>This mode is suitable when taking photos of scenes with background sound.</p>	<p>Set the interval and number of photos to take automatically.</p> <p>This mode is suitable when taking photos of an object or scene that is moving or changing over time.</p>	<p>Highlight the outline of the subject using backlight.</p> <p>This mode is suitable when taking artistic photos through contrast between the background and the subject.</p>	<p>Take photos of the sunset in rich colours.</p> <p>This mode is suitable when taking photos of the sunset or the evening glow.</p>	<p>Take photos of beautifully lit landscapes at night.</p> <p>This mode is suitable when taking photos of dark scenes or the landscape at night.</p>	<p>Take photos of fireworks.</p> <p>This mode is suitable when taking photos of fireworks.</p>	<p>Take photos of light trails to make them more dramatic.</p> <p>This mode is suitable when taking photos of the headlights of a moving car or lit areas at night.</p>
							
<p>When taking photos of a subject that is moving very little or moving a great deal, the camera may not recognise all of the movements.</p>		<p>To save battery power, the device turns on and takes photos between intervals only.</p>	<p>To maximise the silhouette effect, take photos at a backlight.</p>		<p>The image may appear blurred because of the slow shutter speed when the device takes photos. Make sure to use a tripod.</p>	<p>The image may appear blurred because of the slow shutter speed when the device takes photos. Make sure to use a tripod.</p>	<p>The image may appear blurred because of the slow shutter speed when the device takes photos. Make sure to use a tripod.</p>

Some content may differ from your device depending on the region or software version, and is subject to change without prior notice.

